

PROJECT:
REPAIR STUDENT DORM DAVIS MANOR

PROJECT NUMBER:
MAHG 15-1053

Revised 28 April 2023

KEESLER AIR FORCE BASE
BILOXI, MISSISSIPPI



Keesler AFB 508 L Street
Keesler AFB, MS 39534

INDEX

SECTION	NAME
06 10 00	ROUGH CARPENTRY
06 20 00	FINISH CARPENTRY GENERAL
06 40 20	INTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK
06 61 20	SOLID SURFACE SHOWER PRODUCTS
06 65 00	SOLID SURFACE FABRICATIONS
07 92 00	JOINT SEALANTS
08 31 00	ACCESS DOORS
09 25 50	GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES
09 30 13	TILE AND GROUT
09 65 13	RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES
09 65 19	RESILIENT TILE FLOORING
09 68 13	TILE CARPETING
09 91 00	PAINT
09 93 23	STAINS AND TRANSPARENT FINISHES
10 11 00	VISUAL DISPLAY UNITS
10 26 00	WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION
10 28 19	TUB AND SHOWER ENCLOSURE
10 40 00	IDENTIFYING DEVICES
10 80 10	TOILET AND BATH ACCESSORIES
12 36 00	COUNTERTOPS
12 48 13	ENTRANCE FLOOR MATS AND FRAMES
22 00 00	PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE
22 40 00	PLUMBING FIXTURES
23 03 00.00 20	BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS
23 05 93	TESTING ADJUSTING AND BALANCING FOR HVAC
23 07 00	THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS
23 09 00	INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROLS FOR HVAC
23 09 13	INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC
23 09 23.02	BACNET DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS
23 30 00	HVAC AIR DISTRIBUTION
23 31 13.00 40	METAL DUCTS
26 10 00	ELECTRICAL – GENERAL PROVISIONS

SECTION 06 10 00
ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Rough carpentry includes carpentry work not specified as part of other sections and which is generally not exposed, except as otherwise indicated. Types of work in this Section include rough carpentry for:
 - 1. Wood nailers and blocking
 - 2. Other rough carpentry indicated
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 6 Section "Finish Carpentry"

1.2 DELIVERY STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Keep materials dry at all times. Protect against exposure to weather and contact with damp or wet surfaces. Stack lumber and provide air circulation within stacks.

1.3 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Fit carpentry work to other work; scribe and cope as required for accurate fit. Correlate location of furring, nailers, blocking, and similar supports to allow proper attachment of other work.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Framing Lumber:
 - 1. Miscellaneous Lumber:
 - a. Provide wood for support or attachment of other work including bucks, nailers, blocking, furring, stripping and similar members. Provide lumber of sizes shown or specified worked into shapes shown.
 - b. Grade: Standard or No. 2 Southern Pine.
 - c. Treated wood for exterior applications and at locations where wood meets concrete.
- B. Plywood:
 - 1. Plywood Backing Panels: For mounting IT equipment, millwork, etc. Provide fire retardant treated plywood panels with grade designation, APA C-C Plugged INT with exterior glue, in 3/4" thickness, 6 ply construction.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

- 1. Fasteners and Anchorages: Provide size, type, material and finish as indicated and as recommended by applicable standards, complying with applicable Federal Specifications for nail, staples, screws, bolts, nuts, washers and anchoring devices.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General Requirements:
1. Discard units of material with defects which might impair quality of work, and units which are too small to use in fabricating work with minimum joints or optimum joint arrangement.
 2. Framing lumber and other rough carpentry shall be fitted closely, set accurately to the required lines and levels and shall be secured in place in a rigid and substantial manner.
 3. All framing and support members, not indicated or specified, shall be provided as necessary for the proper completion of the work.
 4. Spiking, nailing and bolting shall be done in an approved manner; spikes, nails and bolts shall be of the proper size, and care shall be used so as not to split the members.
 5. Provide framing to support all edges of covering material.
- B. Wood Nailers, and Blocking:
1. Provide wherever shown and where required for attachment of other work. Form to shapes as shown or required and cut as required for true line and level of work to be attached. Coordinate location with other work involved.
 2. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loading. Countersink bolts and nuts flush with surfaces, unless otherwise shown. Build into masonry during installation of masonry work.
 3. 12" o.c. along intermediate supports, and 3/8" minimum from panel edge.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 06 20 00

FINISH CARPENTRY GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. The work required under this Section consists of all finish carpentry, "custom" grade millwork and casework for stain finish and related items to complete the work as indicated on the Drawings and described in the Specifications

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit shop drawings in accordance with the Statement of Work.
- B. Shop drawings shall include but not be limited to the following:
 1. Complete elevations of all millwork units
 2. Sections and details of construction
 3. Finishes
 4. Methods of assembling sections
 5. Location and installation of hardware
 6. Size, shape and thickness of materials
 7. Joint and connection details
 8. Details of joining with other work.

1.3 INDUSTRY STANDARDS

- A. Sizes, thicknesses and grades shall be defined by the rules of the recognized Association of Lumber Manufacturers producing the materials specified, but defects or blemishes prohibited by this Specification, even though permissible in grade, shall not appear in the materials used.
- B. Each panel of softwood plywood shall be identified with the DFPA Grade trademark of the American Plywood Association and shall meet the requirements of the latest edition of U. S. Product Standards PS 166 for Softwood Plywood.
- C. Finish carpentry shall be governed by "Quality Standards" of the Architectural Woodwork Institute.
- D. Quality standards - except as otherwise shown or specified, comply with specified provisions of the following: Architectural Woodwork Institute (AWI) "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards".

1.4 HANDLING AND STORAGE

- A. Insure proper protection from weather and damage during delivery and job site storage of all materials of this Section.
- B. Wood materials shall not be stored within the structure until work is reasonably dry. Store all carpentry materials and millwork in an area protected from weather, moisture, and damage. C. Handle all products to prevent damage or soiling.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Conditioning: Installer shall advise contractor of temperature and humidity requirements for woodwork installation areas. Do not install woodwork until required temperature and relative humidity have been stabilized and will be maintained in installation areas.
- B. Maintain temperature and humidity in installation area as required to maintain moisture content of installed woodwork within a 1.0 percent tolerance of optimum moisture content, from date of installation through remainder of construction period. The fabricator of woodwork shall determine optimum moisture content and required temperature and humidity condition.

PART 2 - MATERIALS

2.1 LUMBER

- A. All lumber shall from sound stock, thoroughly seasoned and free from defects. Moisture content of finish lumber shall not exceed eleven (11) percent. Each piece of lumber must bear the grade and trademark of the association under which it is graded.
- B. Framing lumber shall be "B or Better" grade kiln dried, Ponderosa Pine.

2.2 PLYWOOD AND SHEET PRODUCTS

- A. All plywood for uses where shown on Drawings shall conform to the industry standards specified.
- B. All plywood which has any edge or surface exposed to the weather shall be exterior type glued.
- C. Use Grade AD where one side is exposed and Grade AA where both sides are exposed to view.
- D. Plastic laminates shall be Formica, Wilson Art, Westinghouse or approved equal, horizontal grade.
- E. Pre-finished high impact wall panels shall be Fibertite textured Fiberglass (FRP) laminated to $\frac{1}{4}$ " for exterior plywood by Nudo Furnish Products or equal in factory standard color with white vinyl moldings for joint covers, caps, end panels caps, inside and outside corners and division bars. Attach with stainless steel white painted drive screw shank nails.

2.3 FINISH WOOD

- A. Furnish free from defects impairing durability or fitness for receiving finish, from sound stock and thoroughly seasoned. Properly sand all materials at mill and hand sand as required at job.
- B. Furnish wood of "B or Better" grade Poplar mill sanded, for economy grade work.

2.4 HARDWARE

- A. Furnish all screws, nails, bolts, plates and other items necessary to complete work.
- B. All finish carpentry shall conform to the latest edition of grade requirement of the AWI Quality Standards, custom grade or economy grade as applicable.

- C. All finish carpentry of every sort shall be put up plumb or level, and straight and true.
- D. In every case, put up trim and firmly secure to proper grounds. Fit and scribe all parts to other work in a careful manner so as not to injure the surfaces in any way.
- E. Blind nail wherever possible, but where not possible, drive and set nails so as to not be visible in the finish.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install all items of finish carpentry including trim of every description, with edges fitted tightly to surfaces on which applied and securely nailed to supporting members with finishing nails, set ready for putty, with tight fitting metered joints and flush surfaces.
- B. Grade: Install paneling and solid wood components to comply with requirements of AWI Custom Grade.
- C. Install woodwork level, plumb, true, and straight. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install level and plumb to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches.
- D. For flush paneling, install with variations in reveal width, alignment of top and bottom edges, and flushness between adjacent panels not exceeding 1/16 inch.
- E. Scribe and cut paneling to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
- F. Paneling: Anchor paneling to supporting substrate with concealed panel-hanger clips or blind nailing ONLY. Do not use face fastening, unless covered by trim.
- G. Standing and Running Trim: Install with minimum number of joints possible, using full-length pieces (from maximum length of lumber available) to greatest extent possible. Scarf running joints and stagger in adjacent and related members. Fill gaps, if any, between top of base and wall with plastic wood filler, sand smooth, and matching final finish where transparent finish is indicated.

3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. Repair damaged and defective work wherever possible to eliminate defects functionally and visually; where not possible to repair properly, replace work. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.

3.3 PROTECTION

- A. All surfaces are to be left clean, ready for painting or staining and all damaged surfaces or items shall be repaired or replaced.
- B. Protect all finish surfaces and hardware, including pulls, hinges, rim locks, etc., until painting is completed.

3.4 CLEANING AND ADJUSTMENT

- A. After installation clean all surfaces of dirt and remove all debris.

- B. Prior to completion of construction, examine all doors and other movable parts; adjust as required and leave hardware in good working order.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 06 40 20
INTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Architectural cabinets.
 - 2. Accessories
- B. Interior architectural woodwork includes wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips unless concealed within other construction before woodwork installation.
- C. Related Section include the following:
 - 1. Division 6 Section "Rough Carpentry".
 - 2. Division 6 Section "Finish Carpentry".
 - 3. Division 6 Section "Solid Surface Shower Products"

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with the Scope of Work.
- B. Product Data: For cabinet hardware and accessories.
- C. Shop Drawings: Show location of each item, dimensioned plans and elevations, large-scale details, attachment devices, and other components.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Quality standards - except as otherwise shown or specified, comply with specified provisions of the following:
 - 1. Architectural Woodwork Institute (AWI) "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards".

1.4 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install woodwork until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Wood Products:
 - 1. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1, Medium Density Overlay (for use with painted plywood only).
 - 2. Interior Hardwood: as specified in Division 6 Section "Finish Carpentry".

2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide cabinet hardware and accessory materials associated with architectural woodwork.
- B. Hinges:
 - 1. 5 Knuckle Hinges: Hinges shall be .95" steel five-knuckle hospital-tip institutional grade quality with .187" diameter tight pin. Hinge shall permit door to swing 270 degrees without binding, and self-closing.
- C. Wire Pulls: Back mounted, solid metal, 4 inches long, 5/16 inch in diameter.
- D. Drawer Slides: Side mounted; full-extension type; zinc-plated steel ball-bearing slides.
- E. Door Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07121.
- F. Drawer Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07041.

- G. Shelf Supports:
 - 1. Where shelving is indicated as "adjustable shelf standards" or "pin type", provide Hafele standard, 25mm, silver anodized aluminum finish or equal. Include metal shelf supports in matching finish.
- H. Round Grommets: ZG "Flip Top" Series, 2" hole, by Doug Mockett & Company or equal. Color to be selected by Contracting Officer.
- I. Exposed Hardware Finishes: For exposed hardware, provide finish that complies with BHMA A156.18 for BHMA finish number indicated.
 - 1. Satin Stainless Steel: BHMA 630.
- J. Adhesives, General: Do not use adhesives that contain urea formaldehyde.

2.3 FABRICATION

- A. General: Complete fabrication to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
 - 1. Interior Woodwork Grade: Custom
 - 2. Shop cut openings to maximum extent possible. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs. Seal edges of openings in countertops with a coat of varnish.
- B. Architectural Cabinets and Shelving, Paneling, Standing and Running Trim, Transparent Finish
 - 1. As specified in Division 6 Section "Finish Carpentry".

2.4 FINISHING

- A. Finish woodwork per Division 6 Section "Finish Carpentry".

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Before installation, condition woodwork to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas. Examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required, including removal of packing and back priming.
- B. Grade: Install woodwork to comply with requirements for the same grade specified in Part 2 for fabrication of type of woodwork involved.
- C. Install woodwork level, plumb, true, and straight to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches. Shim as required with concealed shims.
- D. Scribe and cut woodwork to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
- E. Anchor woodwork to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing as required for complete installation. Use fine finishing nails for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with woodwork.
- F. Cabinets: Install without distortion so doors and drawers fit openings properly and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation.
- G. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, at ends and not more than 16 inches o.c.
- H. Countertops: Anchor securely by screwing through corner blocks of base cabinets or other supports into underside of countertop. Caulk space between counter and wall with sealant specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

END OF SECTION

SECTION 06 61 20
SOLID SURFACE SHOWER PRODUCTS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 RELATED SECTIONS

Related work specified in other sections:

- Section 06 10 00: Rough Carpentry
- Section 06 20 00: Finish Carpentry
- Section 06 40 20: Interior Architectural Woodwork
- Section 09 25 50: Gypsum Board Assemblies
- Section 07 92 00: Joint Sealing
- Section 22 40 00: Plumbing Fixtures

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. Codes and Standards referenced in this section refer to the latest edition:
1. ABA/ADA
 2. IBC
- B. Applicable Standards referenced herein:
1. ASTM: American Society for Testing and Materials
 2. ANSI: American National Standards Institute
 3. NSF: National Sanitation Foundation

1.3 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
1. Meridian Solid Surface® material, or equal, as indicated and specified
- B. Work Specified in this Section:
1. One-piece Standard Shower Pans (fiberglass) / Shower Receptors (ABA/ADA and standard)
 2. Custom Shower Thresholds
 3. Shower Wall Panels
 4. Shower Accessories
 5. Shower Trim Moldings

1.4 DEFINITION

- A. Solid surface is a homogeneous thermoset polymer compound, comprised of acrylic and polyester components blended with pigments and/or mineral fillers and filled with alumina trihydrate. Material is non-porous and homogenous, with uniform color and pattern throughout the entire thickness.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product data.

- B. Shop drawings - Installer shall provide detailed shop drawings indicating all details for installation.
- C. Submit samples for Product Verification, 4"x4"x1/4" nominal
 - 1. Submit samples of full range of available colors for color selection. Color by Contracting Officer.
- D. Care & Maintenance Data - Provide manufacturer's care and maintenance instructions

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Transport and deliver all items in appropriate packaging to prevent damage.
- B. Handle materials to prevent damage to adjacent surfaces and previous work.
- C. Carry all shower wall panels vertically to avoid breakage during transport.
- D. Store materials in a manner that will not cause potential damage to materials. Provide protective covering to prevent damage to surface finish, store flat dry location out of the way of traffic, etc.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations
 - 1. Where solid surface shower bases, solid surface wall panels, or other solid surface shower components are indicated on drawings, the material shall be Meridian Solid Surface®, manufactured by Tower Industries, Inc., 2101 Ninth St. SW, Massillon, OH 44647. Phone 330.837.2216, or equal.
- B. Installation Qualifications
 - 1. Install shower products in accordance with published manufacturer shower product installation procedures packaged with each shower base and/or as available from manufacturer.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Furnish the manufacturer's Limited Ten-Year Commercial Warranty covering defects in material and workmanship. Term of warranty to commence upon date product is delivered to the jobsite.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. Basis of design or Equal
 - 1. Lighthouse Marble Works, Inc.
8212 Woolmarket Rd.
Biloxi, MS 36532
228.392.3038

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Solid Polymer Fabrications

1. Solid surface material shall be a homogeneous thermoset polymer compound comprised of acrylic and polyester components blended with pigments and/or mineral fillers and filled with alumina trihydrate. Materials shall be non-porous and homogenous, with uniform color and pattern throughout the entire thickness. Materials shall be 100% repairable.
2. Solid surface material shall meet or exceed all performance requirements listed in Section F below.
3. All products shall carry a Limited Ten-Year Commercial Warranty covering defects in material and workmanship.

B. Products

1. Standard, One-Piece Shower Pans / Shower Receptors
 - a. Standard shower pans shall be manufactured from solid cast polyester/acrylic blend resin and have fixed drain locations, coved side walls, a minimum 3" wide panel platform with a minimum 5° slope and a 1" minimum water dam.
 - b. Shower pans shall have a pebble-textured, non-skid floor pitched toward the drain at a minimum 0.6° slope (1/8" per foot)
 - c. Shower pans shall have a non-slip co-efficient rating of .30 or greater as registered by the ASTM F462 slip resistance test method.
 - d. Shower Pans shall be a minimum of 9/16" thick at the thinnest point of the drain orifice.
 - e. Shower pans shall meet the minimum ANSI Z124.2 certification.
 - f. Shower pan model(s) shall be as follows:
 1. 36"x36" Square.
 - g. Accessible shower pans shall have a shop-applied flange of flexible waterproof membrane permanently affixed to accessible threshold for integration into adjacent finished floor at time of floor installation.
2. Shower Wall Panels
 - a. Shower wall panels shall be manufactured from solid cast polyester/acrylic blend resin.
 - b. Shower wall panel type shall be as follows:
 - c. 1/4" thickness, Model MSP140000
 - d. Shower wall panels shall be manufactured and supplied at largest practical sizes so as to minimize seaming at the jobsite.
 - e. Shower wall panels shall be trimmed and scribed at time of installation to ensure proper fit.
3. Shower Trim Moldings
 - a. Shower trim moldings shall be manufactured from solid cast polyester/acrylic blend resin.
 - b. Shower trim molding type(s) shall be as follows:
 1. Batten Strip, 2"W x 1/4" thick x lengths as shown on drawings, Model MSTM00BA or equal.
 2. Inside Corner Molding, Chamfered, 1"W x 1/2" thick x lengths as shown on shop drawings, Model MSTM00IC or equal.

- c. Inside Corner Molding, 1" x 1" x lengths as shown on shop drawings, Model STM00CS or equal.
 - 1. Inside Corner Molding shall be installed using Solid Surface Molding Adhesive supplied by the manufacturer. See section 3.2 Installation of this Specification Section for additional information or equal.
 - 2. Outside Corner Moldings, Miter-Folded, 1" x 1" x lengths as shown on shop drawings, Model MSTM00OC or equal.
 - 4. Shower Accessories
 - a. Shower accessories shall be manufactured from solid cast polyester/acrylic blend resin.
 - b. Shower accessory types(s) shall be as follows:
 - 1. Custom cultured marble shower surround w/ shampoo & soap alcove.
 - C. Color
 - 5. Shower Base & Threshold Color: Color by Contracting Officer.
(To be selected from manufacturer's standard selection of solid colors)
 - 6. Shower Wall Panel Color: Color by Contracting Office.
(To be selected from manufacturer's standard selection of solid colors)
 - 7. Shower Accessory & Trim Molding Color: Color by Contracting Officer.
(To be selected from manufacturer's standard selection of solid colors)
 - D. Finish
 - 1. All products to be supplied in Matte Finish
 - E. Basic Limitations
 - 1. Material designed for interior use only.
- * Boiling water and high temperature resistance tests may have an effect on the surface.
- F. Fire Test Data
 - 1. Solid Surface materials shall be classified by Underwriters Laboratories under UL File Number R14436 for surface burning characteristics.
 - 2. Test data for Solid Surface panels shall be generated according to ASTM E 84: Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials. This procedure is catalogued by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. as UL 723. For panels with a thickness of one-half inch (13 mm), the Flame Spread Index is less than or equal to 25 and the Smoke Developed Index is less than or equal to 25.
 - 3. Materials shall comply with the following Codes:
 - a. Approved by NSF International Standard 51 "Splash Zone" areas.
 - b. ASTM G-22 bacterial resistance
 - c. ASTM G-21 fungal resistance

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine all substrates to receive solid surfacing for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install products plumb and level in locations indicated, in accordance with manufacturer's recommended installation procedures.
 - 1. Trim and scribe all shower wall panels and shower trim moldings to ensure proper fit.
 - 2. Form field joints at wall panels (where required) using manufacturer's recommended adhesive, with joints inconspicuous in finished work.
 - 3. Cut and finish component edges with clean, sharp returns.
- B. Inside Corner Trim Molding and Solid Surface Molding Adhesive shall be installed and used in accordance with instructions provided by manufacturer.
 - 1. Inside Corner Trim Molding shall be installed using a continuous bead of Solid Surface Molding Adhesive.
 - 2. Solid Surface Molding Adhesive shall be applied so as to completely fill the void behind the molding and between the adjacent wall panels.
 - 3. Installer shall comply with all requirements contained within the sealant installation instructions provided by manufacturer.
- C. Coordinate plumbing installation with Division 15.

3.3 CLEANING

- A. Keep components clean during installation.
- B. Remove all adhesives and sealants from the product surfaces.
- C. After installation is complete, remove all excess adhesive, dirt and debris from the installation area.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect surfaces from damage until project is completed. Repair or replace damaged components which cannot be repaired to the Contracting Officer's satisfaction.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 06 65 00

SOLID SURFACE FABRICATIONS

PART I - GENERAL

1.01 DESCRIPTION

- A. The work required under this Section consists of acrylic (polymer) solid surface material used for reception counter surfacing and countertop surfacing to complete the work as indicated on the Drawings and described in the Specifications.

1.02 REFERENCES

- A. Applicable Standards: Standards of the following, as referenced herein:
 - 1. American National Standards Institute (ANSI)
 - 2. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)
 - 3. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA)

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with the Scope of Work.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate dimensions, component sizes, fabrication details, attachment provisions and coordination requirements with adjacent work.
- C. Samples: Submit minimum 2" x 2" (50 mm x 50 mm) samples. Indicate full range of color and pattern variation. Approved samples will be retained as standards for work.
- D. Product Data: Indicate product description, fabrication information and compliance with specified performance requirements.
- E. Maintenance Data: Submit manufacturer's care and maintenance data, including repair and cleaning instructions. Include in project closeout documents.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Allowable Tolerances:
 - 1. Variation in component size: $\pm 1/8"$ (3 mm).
 - 2. Location of openings: $\pm 1/8"$ (3 mm) from indicated location.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver no components to project site until areas are ready for installation. Store components indoors prior to installation.
- B. Handle materials to prevent damage to finished surfaces. Provide protective coverings to prevent physical damage or staining following installation for duration of project.

1.06 WARRANTY

- A. Provide manufacturer's ten (10) year warranty against defects in materials. Warranty shall provide material and labor to repair or replace defective materials. Damage caused by physical or chemical abuse or damage from excessive heat will not be warranted.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 SOLID SURFACE FABRICATIONS

- A. Specifications are based on solid surface materials manufactured by Dupont Corian, P.O. Box 80702, Wilmington DE 19880-0702; Phone (800) 426-7426.
- B. Or Approved Equal.
- C. Material: Homogeneous filled acrylic; not coated, laminated or of composite construction; meeting ANSI Z124.3.
 - 1. Superficial damage to a depth of 0.010" (25mm) shall be repairable by sanding and polishing.
- D. Reception Counter and Counter Tops: Horizontal surfaces and vertical surfaces shall be thick solid polymer material adhesively joined with inconspicuous seams; edge details as indicated on the drawings.
- E. Color: Color shall be priced from the Private and Terra Collections price group. Color to be Earth with standard finish.

2.02 ACCESSORIES

- A. Joint Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard two part adhesive kit to create inconspicuous, non-porous joints, with a chemical bond.

2.03 FABRICATION

- A. For warranty coverage, fabricator/installer shall be approved or certified by solid polymer manufacturer.
- B. Fabricate components in shop to greatest extent practical to sizes and shapes indicated, in accordance with approved shop drawings and solid polymer manufacturer requirements.
- C. Form joints between components using manufacturer's standard joint adhesive. Joints shall be inconspicuous in appearance and without voids. Attach 2" (50 mm) wide reinforcing strip of solid polymer material under each joint.
- D. Provide holes and cutouts for plumbing and bath accessories as indicated on the drawings.
- E. Rout and finish component edges to a smooth, uniform finish. Rout all cutouts and sand all edges smooth. Repair or reject defective or inaccurate work.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Install components plumb and level, in accordance with approved shop drawings and product installation details.
- B. Form filed joints using manufacturer's recommended adhesive, with joints inconspicuous in finished work. Keep component and hands clean when making joints.
- C. Adhere top-mount sink/bowls to countertops using manufacturer's recommended adhesives and color matched silicone sealant.
- D. Provide backsplashes and end splashes as indicated on drawings. Adhere to countertops using manufacturer's standard color matched silicone sealant.
- E. Keep components and hands clean during installation. Remove adhesives, sealants and other stains.
- F. Protect surfaces from damage. Repair or replace damaged work that cannot be repaired to Contracting Officer's satisfaction.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07 92 00

JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. The extent of each form and type of joint sealer is indicated on drawings and by provisions of this section.
- B. The applications for joint sealers as work of this section include the following:
 - 1. Wall joints at floors.
 - 2. At locations where dissimilar metals and/or materials come together.
 - 3. Other locations indicated.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit according to the requirements stated in the SOW.
- B. Product Literature
 - 1. Submit product data sheets and the manufacturer's installation instructions. If two or more different sealants are to be in physical contact with each other, obtain from each manufacturer confirmation that its product is compatible with the proposed and adjacent products, including any other products which may be used by other sub-contractors. Include primer literature with the submittal document unless the manufacturer's sealant submittal specifically eliminates the need for a primer.
 - 2. If a stain type primer is required for the sealant selected, such information shall be specifically included on submittal documents calling attention to the need for such staining type primer and noting the planned precautions to prevent exposed stain residue.
 - 3. Include Safety Data Sheets for sealants.
- C. Color Samples: Submit manufacturer's standard color chart. Submit cured samples of each chosen color for verification of actual color to be installed. Multiple cured samples may be required for selection. Color by CO.

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver in manufacturer's original unopened container, clearly identifying each product specified, relating it to the product literature submitted.
- B. Store in accordance with manufacturer's recommendation, with proper precautions concerning shelf life, temperature, humidity, and similar storage factors to ensure the fitness of the material when installed.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General Sealer Performance Requirements
 - 1. Provide colors indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, as selected by Contracting Officer from manufacturer's standard colors. Select materials for compatibility with joint surfaces and other indicated exposures, and except as otherwise indicated, select modulus of elasticity and hardness or grade recommended by manufacturer for each application indicated.
- B. Type 1: Non-Elastomeric Sealants (Caulking)
 - 1. Single component siliconized acrylic latex caulking compound: ASTM C834, gun grade; flexible, paintable, non-staining, non-bleeding, acrylic emulsion.
 - 2. Use: Interior sealing around doors and gypsum board.

3. Acceptable Manufacturers/Products, or Approved Equal:
 - a. GE Silicones RCS 20
 - b. Bostik, Chem-Calk 600
 - c. DAP, Inc., DAP ALEX PLUS Acrylic-latex Caulk Plus Silicone
 - d. Pecora, AC-20 + Silicone
 - e. Sonneborn, Sonolac
 - f. Tremco, Tremflex 834 Acrylic Latex Caulk

2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Primer: Non-staining type, recommended by sealant manufacturer to suit application.
- B. Joint Primer/Sealer: Provide type of joint primer/sealer recommended by sealant manufacturer for joint surfaces to be primed or sealed.
- C. Sealant Backer Rod: Compressible rod stock of open or closed cell polyethylene or polyurethane as recommended by sealant manufacturer for compatibility with sealant.
- D. Bond Breaker Tape: An acceptable polyethylene or similar type bond breaker tape used to prevent three-sided adhesion in locations where backer rod cannot be used.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Inspect substrate surface to assure that no bond breaker materials contaminate the surface to which the sealant is to adhere and to ensure that unsound substrates are repaired. Installation of sealant shall be evidence of acceptance of the substrate.
- B. Verify joint dimensions prior to installation of the sealant to ensure that all dimensions are within tolerance established in the manufacturer's literature. Unacceptable variations shall be called to the Contracting Officers attention for resolution prior to installing any material.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean joint surfaces immediately before installation of sealant or caulking compound. Remove dirt, insecure coatings, moisture and other substances which could interfere with bond of sealant or caulking compound. Etch concrete and masonry joint surfaces as recommended by sealant manufacturer.
- B. Prime or seal joint surfaces where indicated, and where not indicated if recommended by sealant manufacturer, prior to installation of any backer rod or bond breaker tape. Do not allow primer/sealer to spill or migrate onto adjoining surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's printed instructions, except where more stringent requirements are shown or specified, and except where manufacturer's technical representative directs otherwise.
- B. Set joint filler units full depth of joint or position in joint to coordinate with other work, including installation of backer rods and sealants. Do not leave voids or gaps between ends of joint filler units.
- C. Install sealant backer rod for liquid elastomeric sealants, except where shown to be omitted or recommended to be omitted by sealant manufacturer for application indicated in which case a bond breaker tape shall be used to prevent 3 sided adhesion. Apply backer rod using blunt or rounded tools which will ensure a uniform depth without puncturing the material. Use a rod oversized a minimum of 33% for closed cell and 50% for open cell, unless otherwise required by the manufacturer.
- D. Employ only proven installation techniques, which will ensure that sealants are deposited in uniform, continuous ribbons without gaps or air pockets, with complete "wetting" of joint bond surfaces equally on opposite sides. Except as otherwise indicated, fill sealant rabbet to a slightly concave surface, slightly below adjoining surfaces, with a smooth, even finish.
- E. Install sealant to depths as shown or, if not shown, as recommended by sealant manufacturer but within the following general limitations, measured at center (thin) section of bead.
 1. For joints sealed with non-elastomeric sealants, fill joints to a depth in range of 75% to

125% of joint width.

- F. Spillage: Do not allow sealants or compounds to overflow or spill onto adjoining surfaces or to migrate into voids of adjoining surfaces. Clean adjoining surfaces by whatever means may be necessary to eliminate evidence of spillage.
- G. Curing: Cure sealants and caulking compounds in compliance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations to obtain high early bond strength, internal cohesive strength and surface durability.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 08 31 00
ACCESS DOORS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Access Doors:
 - 1. Flush access doors.
 - 2. Drywall recessed access doors.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 06 10 00 - Rough Carpentry.
- B. Section 09 25 50 - Gypsum Board Assemblies.
- C. Section 09 91 00 - Paint.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM International (ASTM):
 - 1. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
 - 2. ASTM E90 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements.
 - 3. ASTM E283 - Standard Test Method for Determining Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Skylights, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen.
 - 4. ASTM E331 - Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Skylights, Doors, and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference.
 - 5. ASTM E413 - Classification for Rating Sound Insulation.
 - 6. ASTM E416 - Standard Practice for Planning and Safe Operation of a Spectrochemical Laboratory.
 - 7. ASTM E1332 - Standard Classification for Rating Outdoor-Indoor Sound Attenuation.
- B. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
 - 1. NFPA 251 - Standard Methods of Tests of Fire Resistance of Building Construction and Materials.
- C. Underwriters Laboratories (UL):
 - 1. UL 10 - Standard for Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
- D. Underwriters Laboratories Canada (ULc):
 - 1. ULc S101 - Standard Methods of Fire Endurance Tests of Building Construction Materials,
 - 2. ULc S104 - Standard Method for Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit according to requirements within the Statement of Work.
- B. Product Data:
 - 1. Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used.

2. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
3. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
4. Typical installation methods.

C. Shop Drawings: Include details of materials, construction, and finish. Include relationship with adjacent construction.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section with a minimum five years documented experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing Work of this section with minimum two years documented experience with projects of similar scope and complexity.
- C. Source Limitations: Provide each type of product from a single manufacturing source to ensure uniformity.

1.6 PRE-INSTALLATION CONFERENCE

- A. Convene a conference approximately two weeks before scheduled commencement of the Work. Attendees shall include Architect, Contractor and trades involved. Agenda shall include schedule, responsibilities, critical path items and approvals.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store and handle in strict compliance with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations.
- B. Protect from damage due to weather, excessive temperature, and construction operations.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's recommended limits.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's standard limited warranty unless indicated otherwise.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer: Acudor Products Inc., which is located at: 9 Woodland Rd. Unit A; Roseland, NJ 07068; Toll Free Tel: 800-722-0501; Tel: 973-575-5120; Fax: 973-575-5160; Email:[request info \(akarp@acudor.com\)](mailto:request%20info%20(akarp@acudor.com)); Web:<https://acudor.com>
- B. Or Equal

2.2 FLUSH ACCESS DOORS

- A. Products: DW-5040 Flush Access Door or equal , for Drywall: Designed specifically for installation in drywall walls and ceilings after the drywall has been installed.
 1. Product Features:
 - a. Formed door panel with flanges on four sides.

- b. Unique concealed hinge, door flange is a perforated tapping bead with pre-punched holes.
- 2. Size: 36 x36 inches.
- 3. Material: 20 ga galvanized door panel, 26 ga galvanized frame.
- 4. Door: Formed door panel with multiple bends for added strength, flanged on four sides. Integral perforated tapping bead adds rigidity.
- 5. Hinge: Concealed.
- 6. Latch and Lock: Cylinder lock and key.
- 7. Finish: 5 stage iron phosphate. Prime Coat: White baked-on polyester powder coat on door panel. Frame: Mill finish.
- 8. Size: 36 x 36 inches.
- 9. Material: Aluminum extrusion with drywall fitted in door panel.
- 10. Door Frame: Aluminum extrusion 6063-T6 (or equal) recessed to provide similar edge to drywall bead to allow for finishing of wall or ceiling surface.
- 11. Hinge: Wing hinge allows door panel to open to 90 degrees, and allows for door panel to be removed from frame.
- 12. Safety Chain: Installed on door and frame for safety.
- 13. Gasket: Dust seal gasket.
- 14. Latch and Lock: Cylinder lock and key.
- 15. Finish: Powder Painted White.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly constructed and prepared.
- B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect in writing of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, approved submittals, and in proper relationship with adjacent construction.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field Inspection: Coordinate field inspection in accordance with appropriate sections in Division 01.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean products in accordance with the manufacturers recommendations.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09 25 50

GYP SUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Interior gypsum wallboard – regular
 - 2. Interior gypsum tile backer board
 - 3. Wallboard finishing (joint tape-and-compound treatment)
 - 4. Levels of Gypsum Board Finish
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Section 09 22 16 – Non-Structural Metal Framing

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Submit manufacturer's product specifications and installation instructions for each gypsum board component, including other data as may be required to show compliance with these specifications.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Gypsum Board:
 - 1. GA-216, "Specifications for the Application and Finishing of Gypsum Board" by Gypsum Association or equal.
 - 2. GA-214-96, "Recommended Levels of Gypsum Board Finish" by Gypsum Association or equal.
- B. Metal Support System Installation: ASTM C754
- C. Manufacturer: Obtain gypsum board products from a single manufacturer, or from manufacturers recommended by the prime manufacturer of gypsum boards
- D. Allowable Tolerances: 1/8" in 8' - 0" variation in finish surface

1.4 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer standard warranty against delamination of facing and degradation of sheet for a period of 12 months from installation of board.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in original packaged, containers or bundles bearing brand name and identification of manufacturer or supplier
- B. Store materials inside under cover and in a manner to keep them dry, protected from weather, direct sunlight, surface contamination, corrosion and damage from construction traffic and other causes. Neatly stack gypsum boards flat to prevent sagging.
- C. Handle gypsum boards to prevent damage to edges, ends or surfaces. Protect metal corner beads and trim from being bent or damaged.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Requirements, General: Comply with requirements of referenced gypsum board application standards and recommendations of gypsum board manufacturer, for environmental conditions before, during and after applications of gypsum board
- B. Cold Weather Protection: When ambient outdoor temperatures are below 55 degrees Fahrenheit maintain continuous, uniform, comfortable building working temperatures

of not less than 55 degrees Fahrenheit for a minimum period of 48 hours prior to, during and following application of gypsum board and joint reinforcement materials or bonding of adhesives.

- C. Ventilation: Ventilate building spaces as required to remove water in excess of that required for drying of joint treatment material immediately after its application. Avoid drafts during dry, hot weather to prevent too rapid drying.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS, or Approved Equal

- A. Gypsum Board:
 - 1. USG Corporation
 - 2. G-P Gypsum Corporation
 - 3. National Gypsum Company
 - 4. Certaineed Corporation
 - 5. Temple Inland
- B. Metal Support System:
 - 1. Dietrich Metal Framing, Inc.
 - 2. MarinoWare; a Division of Ware Industries

2.2 NON-LOAD-BEARING STEEL FRAMING, GENERAL

- A. Framing Members, General: Comply with ASTM C 754 for conditions indicated.
 - 1. Steel Sheet Components: Comply with ASTM C 645 requirements for metal, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Protective Coating: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60, hot-dip galvanized zinc coating, unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 STEEL FRAMING FOR FRAMED ASSEMBLIES

- A. Steel Studs and Runners: ASTM C 645.
 - 1. Double 18 gage stud framing at all openings including door and view panels.
 - 2. 22 gauge at 16" o.c. for other locations.
 - 3. Use 18 gauge for all runners.
- B. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where indicated or at a minimum where required by the Steel Stud Manufacturers Association (SSMA), provide the following:
 - 1. Double-Runner System: ASTM C 645 top runners, inside runner with 2-inch deep flanges in thickness not less than indicated for studs and fastened to studs, and outer runner sized to friction fit inside runner.
 - 2. Deflection Track: Steel sheet top runner manufactured to prevent cracking of finishes applied to interior partition framing resulting from deflection of structure above; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.
- C. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645.
 - 1. Minimum Base Metal Thickness: 25 gauge
 - 2. Depth: 1-1/2 inches unless otherwise noted.

2.4 STEEL FRAMING ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners for Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.

2.5 Provide stud manufacturer's standard clips, shoes, ties, reinforcement, and other accessories as needed for a complete partition framing system.

2.6 GYPSUM BOARD MATERIALS

- A. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C 1396, of types, edge configuration and thickness indicated below; in maximum lengths available to minimize end-to-end butt joints.
 - 1. Types:

- a. Regular, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Edges: Tapered.
3. Thickness: 5/8", unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Tile Backer Board (provide at all locations where wall tile occurs and other areas indicated):
 1. 1/2" and 5/8" Dens Shield Tile Backer Board as manufactured by Georgia Pacific Corporation.
 2. 1/2" and 5/8" Fiber Brand Sheathing – Aqua Tough Tile Backerboard as manufactured by USG Corporation.
 3. Equal as approved.

2.7 TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. Interior Trim: ASTM C 1047.
 1. Material: Sheet steel zinc coated by the hot dip process or electrolytic process, or sheet steel coated with aluminum.
 2. Shapes:
 - a. Cornerbead: use at outside corners, unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. U-Bead: J-shaped; exposed short flange does not receive joint compound, use at exposed panel edges
 - c. Expansion (control) joint: One piece control joint formed with V-shaped slot and removable strip covering slot opening.

2.8 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 475.
- B. Joint Tape:
 1. Interior Gypsum Wallboard: Paper.
 2. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.
- C. Setting Type Joint Compound: Factory prepackaged, job mixed chemical-hardening powder products for bedding and filling, formulated for uses indicated.
 1. For taping and filling only.
 2. For prefilling gypsum board joints.
 3. For filling joints and treating fasteners of mold and mildew resistant backing board behind base for ceramic tile.
 4. For topping compound, use sandable formulation.
- D. Drying-Type Joint Compounds: Factory prepackaged vinyl-based products complying with the following requirements for formulation and intended use.
 1. Ready-Mix Formulation: Factory-mixed product.
 2. All-purpose compound formulated for use as both taping and topping compound (use for finish (third and above) coats only.)
- E. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by backing panel manufacturer.

2.9 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written recommendations.
- B. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C 1002, unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Use screws complying with ASTM C 954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Do not deliver or install gypsum board until building is fully enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates to which gypsum board construction attaches or abuts, installed hollow metal frames, cast-in anchors and structural framing with Installer present for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of gypsum board assemblies specified in this Section.
 - 1. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Support Systems:
 - 1. Wall/Partition Support System: Support systems shall extend from floor to heights indicated on partition types/schedule.
 - a. Install runner tracks at floors and bottom of roof or floor framing members and where stud system abuts other construction. Where partitions parallel, but are not directly beneath framing members, where there is no floor above, provide runner, or stud, headers between beams, spaced 4 feet on center, attached at each end, and secure top runner of partition thereto.
 - b. Space studs 16 inches on center, unless otherwise indicated.
 - c. Frame door openings with 20 gage vertical studs. Provide runner track header of same gage as jamb studs, and jack studs same as partition studs across head of opening.
 - d. Frame other openings same as door openings and frame above and below openings same as above door head.
 - e. Install supplementary framing, runners, blocking and bracing at openings and terminations in the work, and at locations required to support fixtures, equipment, services, heavy trim and similar work which cannot be adequately supported on gypsum board alone.
 - f. Secure perimeter framing to structural elements with suitable fasteners located 2 inches from each end and 24 inches apart between, except top runner parallel to, but not directly under, framing members will be attached with 2 screws to headers provided at 48 inches on center. Anchor studs adjacent to door and fixed light openings, partition intersections, and corners to top and bottom runner flanges. Make web-flange bend at each end of runner over openings and screw to jamb studs with 2 screws each end.
- B. Gypsum Board
 - 1. Install, fasten and finish gypsum wallboard and accessories in strict accordance with manufacturer's printed directions and recommendations, with GA-216.
 - 2. Install gypsum board with face side out. Do not install imperfect, damaged or damp boards. Butt boards together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16" open space between boards. Do not force into place.
 - 3. Locate edge and end joints over supports. Position boards so that both tapered edge joints abut, and mill-cut or field-cut end joints abut. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends.
 - 4. Stagger end joints on horizontal applications.
 - 5. Space fasteners in gypsum boards in accordance with referenced standards and manufacturer's recommendations, except as otherwise indicated.
 - a. Fasten base layer to metal supports with screws, spaced 12" o.c. along supported edges and 24" o.c. along intermediate supports.
 - b. Fasten single layer and face layer to metal supports with screws, spaced 12" o.c. for 24" stud spacing and 16" o.c. for 16" stud spacing, unless otherwise indicated. Stagger screws on abutting edges and ends.
- C. Trim Accessories

1. General: Where feasible, use the same fasteners to anchor trim accessory flanges as required to fasten gypsum board to the supports. Otherwise, fasten flanges by nailing or stapling in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations.
2. Install metal corner beads at all exposed external corners of gypsum board work.
3. Install metal edge trim when edge of gypsum board would otherwise be exposed or semi-exposed and where work is tightly abutted to other work.
4. Control Joints:
 - a. Install control joints at locations indicated, or if not indicated, at spacings and locations required by ASTM C 840 and manufacturer's recommendations; and approved by Contracting Officer for visual effect.
 - 1) Provide not more than 30 feet apart on walls and ceilings.

3.4 FINISHING OF GYPSUM WALL BOARD

- A. General: Apply joint treatment at gypsum board joints (both directions); flanges of corner bead, edge trim and control joints; penetrations; fastener heads, surface defects and elsewhere as required to prepare work for decoration.
- B. Prefill open joints using setting-type joint compound.
- C. Apply joint tape at joints between gypsum boards, except where trim accessories are indicated.
- D. Finish interior gypsum wallboard by applying the following joint compounds in three coats (not including prefill of openings in base), sand between coats, and after last coat.
 1. Embedding and First Coat: Setting-type joint compound.
 2. Fill (Second) Coat: Setting-type joint compound.
 3. Finish (Third) Coat: Ready-mix drying all-purpose or topping compound.
- E. Glass-Mat Water Resistant Backer Board: Comply with glass mat backer board manufacturer's recommendations.
- F. Partial Finishing: Omit third coat and sanding on concealed drywall construction indicated for drywall finishing or which requires finishing to achieve sound rating.
- G. Levels of Finish: Provide in accordance with Gypsum Association GA 214, "Recommended Levels of Gypsum Board Finish".
 1. Level 0: Not Used
 2. Level 1: Not Used
 3. Level 2: Not Used
 4. Level 3: Not Used
 5. Level 4: All Gypsum board surfaces, except where another finish level is indicated.
 - a. All joints and interior angles shall have tape embedded in joint compound.
 - b. Two separate coats of joint compound applied over all flat joints.
 - c. One separate coat of joint compound applied over interior angles.
 - d. Fastener heads and accessories shall be covered with three separate coats of joint compound.
 - e. All joint compound shall be smooth and free of tool marks and ridges.
 6. Level 5: Not Used

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- B. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09 30 13
TILE and GROUT

PART I - GENERAL

1.01 DESCRIPTION

- A. The work required under this Section consists of ceramic tile, ceramic mosaic tile, setting materials and related items to complete the work as indicated on the Drawings and described in the Specifications.

1.02 MANUFACTURERS

- A. For purposes of designating type and quality for the work under this Section, Drawings and Specifications are based on products manufactured or furnished by American Olean Tile Co., Inc. for tile and MAPEA Corporation for setting materials.
- B. Products of other manufacturers similar to those specified herein will be acceptable for use on the project when approved in writing by the Contracting Officer. Supporting technical literature, samples, drawings and performance data sheets must be submitted for comparison. Samples must have selection range of colors and finishes equal to American Olean Tile Co., Inc.
- C. Products for use on this project shall be of one manufacturer unless noted specifically otherwise herein.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit samples in accordance with Statement of Work.
- B. Submit wall and floor tile sample boards of all tile of variety of tile specified for tile intended.
- C. Furnish prior to installation ceramic tile in the amount of 5 percent of the area of each type in the project for use as maintenance materials.
- D. Furnish Master Grade Certificate signed by manufacturer and installer stating type and quantity of material.

1.04 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

- A. Install tile only when temperatures are 55 F or above during and for seven days after installation.

1.05 HANDLING AND STORAGE

- A. Products shall be delivered to the job site in manufacturer's original wrapping and packaging. Handling, storage and installation of tile, marble and accessory materials shall conform to the instructions supplied by the manufacturer.
- B. Store and handle products in a clean, dry, covered area to prevent damage, wetting, soiling or staining.

1.06 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Tile: Full-size units equal to 5 percent of amount installed for each type installed.

PART 2 - MATERIALS

2.01 FLOOR TILE

- A. Floor tile shall be glazed floor tile conforming to ANSI A137.1-1980 Standard Grade glazed tile equal to "ColorBody Porcelain Tile" as manufactured by American Olean Tile. Tile shall match existing facial and height dimensions. Furnish matching cove base and trim shapes.

2.02 GROUTING AND SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement ASTM C-150, Type I.
- B. Hydrated Lime ASTM C-206 or C-207, Type S.
- C. Sand ASTM C-144.
- D. Water clean and drinkable.
- E. Dry-Set Mortars TCA 3-63, White-American Olean, L & M, Upco or Kaiser.
- F. Latex Mortars ANSI A118.4, L & M Polycrete.
- G. Grout for walls or floors shall be commercial color, to be select Portland Cement type grout, wet or dry-cure formulation as appropriate, American Glean, L & M, Upco, Kaiser or Custom.
- H. Mortar - one part Portland Cement, 6 parts damp sand by volume.

2.03 SEALANTS AND WATERPROOFING

- A. Sealants shall be white, fungicidal, one-part silicone rubber meeting Federal Specification TT-001543, Class A or B (COM-NBS).
- B. Waterproofing shall be One-Kote elastomeric liquid membrane as manufactured by Karnock Corporation (800) 526-4236 or equal.

2.04 PROTECTIVE MATERIALS

- A. Neutral cleaner such as Hillyard Super Shine-All.
- B. Heavy-duty, non-staining construction paper with compatible masking tape.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 ACCEPTABILITY OF SURFACES

- A. Set no tile until variations in substrate have been leveled so that maximum floor variation is ¼ inch in 10 feet and maximum wall variation is ¼ inch in 8 feet.
- B. All surfaces to receive tile shall be free of curing membranes, oil, grease, wax, and dust.

3.02 LAYOUT

- A. Determine locations of all porcelain accessories before starting tile work.
- B. Lay out all tile work so as to minimize cuts less than one-half tile in size.
- C. Locate cuts in both walls and floors so as to be least conspicuous.
- D. Align all wall joints to give straight uniform grout lines, plumb and level.
- E. Align all floor joints to give straight uniform grout lines, parallel with walls.

3.03 EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Determine locations of all movement joints before starting tile work.

- B. Install no less than $\frac{1}{4}$ inch joints in the following locations:
 - 1. Where tile work abuts restraining surfaces such as perimeter walls, curbs, pipes, etc.
 - 2. Directly over joints in structural floor including construction joint or cold joints.
 - 3. At 12 feet o.c. each way in ceramic tile fields.
- C. Install joints in accordance with Tile Council of America Method EJ 171.

3.04 SETTING METHODS

- A. Set floor tile with Tile Council of America method F112 in accordance with ANSI A108.1 and ANSI A108.10.
- B. Set wall tile on concrete masonry units with Tile Council of America method W202 in accordance with, ANSI A108.5, and ANSI A108.10.
- C. After tile is sufficiently set, force maximum grout into the joints by trowel, squeegee, brush or finger application. Before grout sets, tool the joints of cushion edge tile to the depth of cushion. Fill all joints of square edged tile to flush with the tile surface. Fill all skips or gaps in grouting, and where white grout is used, do not permit dark adhesive or cement to show. During grouting, clean off excess grout with clean cloths or sponges. After grout has stiffened, thoroughly sponge and wash tile with clean water. Then clean surfaces by rubbing with damp cloths or sponges and finally polish with clean dry cloths.
- D. Joints between metal door frames and ceramic tile and all expansion joints shall be filled with sealant.

3.05 CLEANUP

- A. Clean tile surfaces as thoroughly as possible on completion of grouting.
- B. Remove all grout haze, observing tile manufacturer's recommendations as to use of acid and chemical cleaners.
- C. Rinse tile work thoroughly with clean water before and after using chemical cleaners.
- D. Polish surface of tile work with soft cloth.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09 65 13
RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Resilient base (RB) adhered to interior walls and partitions.
 - 2. Resilient stair treads (RST) adhered to interior stair treads.
 - 3. Sheet rubber flooring (SRF) adhered to interior stair landings.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Sheet Flooring Integral Base: Section 09 65 16, RESILIENT SHEET FLOORING.
- B. Rubber Tile Flooring at Landings: Section 09 65 19, RESILIENT TILE FLOORING.

1.3 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. Comply with references to extent specified in this section.
- B. ASTM International (ASTM):
 - F1344-15 Rubber Floor Tile.
 - F1859-14e1 Rubber Sheet Floor Covering without Backing.
 - F1860-14e1 Rubber Sheet Floor Covering with Backing.
 - F1861-16 Resilient Wall Base.
 - D4259-18 Preparation of Concrete by Abrasion Prior to Coating Application.
- C. Federal Specifications (Fed. Spec.):
 - RR-T-650E (1994) Treads, Metallic and Non-Metallic, Skid-Resistant.
- D. International Concrete Repair Institute (ICRI):
 - 310.2R-2013 Selecting and Specifying Concrete Surface Preparation for Sealers, Coatings, Polymer Overlays, and Concrete Repair.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals in accordance with the Statement of Work.
- B. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
 - 1. Description of each product.
 - 2. Adhesives and primers indicating manufacturer's recommendation for each application.
 - 3. Installation instructions.
- C. Samples:
 - 1. Resilient Base: 150 mm (6 inches) long, each type and color.
 - 2. Resilient Stair Treads: 150 mm (6 inches) long, each type and color.
 - 3. Sheet Rubber Flooring: 300 mm (12 inches) square, each type and color.
- D. Sustainable Construction Submittals:

1. Recycled Content: Identify post-consumer and pre-consumer recycled content percentage by weight.
2. Low Pollutant-Emitting Materials:
 - a. Stair Treads and Sheet Rubber Flooring: Submit Floor Score label.
 - b. Show volatile organic compound types and quantities.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data:
 1. Care instructions for each exposed finish product.

1.5 DELIVERY

- A. Deliver products in manufacturer's original sealed packaging.
- B. Mark packaging, legibly. Indicate manufacturer's name or brand, type, color, production run number, and manufacture date.
- C. Before installation, return or dispose of products within distorted, damaged, or opened packaging.

1.6 STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store products indoors in dry, weather tight facility.
- B. Protect products from damage when handling and during construction operations.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environment:
 1. Product Temperature: Minimum 21 degrees C (70 degrees F) for minimum 48 hours before installation.
 2. Work Area Ambient Temperature Range: 21 to 27 degrees C (70 to 80 degrees F) continuously, beginning 48 hours before installation.
 3. Install products when building is permanently enclosed and when wet construction is completed, dried, and cured.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Construction Warranty: FAR clause 52.246-21, "Warranty of Construction."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCTS

- A. Provide each product from one manufacturer and from one production run.
- B. Provide resilient stair treads and sheet rubber flooring from same manufacturer.

Manufacturer: Johnsonite, Inc. (or equal)
Phone (800) 899-8916
16910 Munn Road (440) 543-8916
Chagrin Falls, Ohio 44023 Tech: Ext 9297
Web: www.johnsonite.com Samples: Ext 9299
Email: info@johnsonite.com Fax: (440) 543-8920

- C. Available in 4' (1.22 m) straight lengths and 120' (36.58 m) coiled lengths

D. Sustainable Construction Requirements:

1. Sheet Rubber Flooring Recycled Content: 90 percent total recycled content, minimum.
2. Low Pollutant-Emitting Materials: Comply with VOC limits specified, SUSTAINABLE CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS for the following products:
 - a. Flooring Adhesives and Sealants.

2.2 RESILIENT BASE

- A. Resilient Base: 4 inches high (#283 Toast).
 1. Type: Rubber or vinyl; use one type throughout.
 2. ASTM F1861, Type TP thermoplastic rubber or Type TV thermoplastic vinyl, Group 2 - layered.
 3. Provide pre—formed inside and outside corners.
- B. Applications:
 1. All Locations: Style B – Cove.

2.3 RESILIENT STAIR TREADS

- A. Resilient Stair Treads: Rubber, skid-resistant abrasive strip nosing, 3/16 inch thick nosing wear surface tapered to 1/8 inch thick at riser.
 1. Fed. Spec. RR-T-650, Composition A, Type 2.
 2. Abrasive Strips: Design for with ADA. access by visually impaired.
 3. Nosing: Flexible, accommodating angle between tread and riser; shape suiting sub-tread.
 4. Size: Single piece full stair tread width and depth.

2.4 SHEET RUBBER FLOORING

- A. Sheet Rubber Flooring (SRF): ASTM F1859 or ASTM F1860; Rubber, 36 inches wide, 1/8 inch thick, smooth face; color and pattern matching resilient stair treads.

2.5 PRIMER (FOR CONCRETE FLOORS)

- A. Primer: Type recommended by adhesive manufacturer.

2.6 LEVELING COMPOUND (FOR CONCRETE FLOORS)

- A. Leveling Compound: Provide products mixed with latex or polyvinyl acetate resins.

2.7 ADHESIVES

- A. Adhesives: Low pollutant-emitting, water based type recommended by adhered product manufacturer for each application.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Examine and verify substrate suitability for product installation.
- B. Protect existing construction and completed work from damage.
- C. Remove existing base stair treads landing flooring to permit new installation.
 1. Dispose of removed materials.

- D. Correct substrate deficiencies.
 - 1. Fill cracks, pits, and depressions with leveling compound.
 - 2. Remove protrusions; grind high spots.
 - 3. Apply leveling compound to achieve 3 mm (1/8 inch) in 3 m (10 feet) maximum surface variation.
- E. Clean substrates. Remove contaminants capable of affecting subsequently installed product's performance.
 - 1. Mechanically clean concrete floor substrate according to ASTM D4259.
 - 2. Surface Profile: ICRI Guideline No. 310.2R.
- F. Allow substrate to dry and cure.
- G. Perform flooring manufacturer's recommended bond, substrate moisture content, and pH tests.

3.2 INSTALLATION GENERAL

- A. Install products according to manufacturer's instructions.
 - 1. When instructions deviate from specifications, submit proposed resolution for Contracting Officer consideration.

3.3 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION

- A. Applications:
 - 1. Install resilient base in rooms scheduled on Drawings.
 - 2. Install resilient base on casework, and other curb supported fixed equipment.
 - 3. Extend resilient base into closets, alcoves, and cabinet knee spaces, and around columns within scheduled room.
- B. Lay out resilient base with minimum number of joints.
 - 1. Length: 24 inches minimum, each piece.
 - 2. Locate joints 6 inches minimum from corners and intersection of adjacent materials.
- C. Installation:
 - 1. Apply adhesive uniformly for full contact between resilient base and substrate.
 - 2. Set resilient base with hairline butted joints aligned along top edge.
- D. Field form corners and end stops.
 - 1. V-groove back of outside corner.
 - 2. V-groove face of inside corner and notch cove for miter joint.
- E. Roll resilient base ensuring complete adhesion.

3.4 RESILIENT STAIR TREAD INSTALLATION

- A. Install resilient stair treads without joints on each stair tread substrate.
 - 1. Install full width resilient stair treads on each intermediate and floor landing.
- B. Apply adhesive uniformly for full contact between resilient stair tread and substrate.
 - 1. Roll resilient stair treads ensuring complete adhesion.

3.5 SHEET RUBBER FLOORING INSTALLATION

- A. Applications:
 - 1. Install sheet rubber flooring on intermediate and floor landings where resilient stair treads are installed.
- B. Lay out sheet rubber flooring symmetrically, with minimum number of joints.
 - 1. Locate floor landing joints centered under doors.
- C. Installation:
 - 1. Apply adhesive uniformly for full contact between sheet rubber flooring and substrate.
 - 2. Install sheet rubber flooring with 1 mm (0.04 inch) maximum width seams, perimeter joints, and joints with adjacent flooring.
 - a. Scribe sheet rubber flooring tight to interrupting surfaces.
 - 3. Roll sheet rubber flooring ensuring complete adhesion.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. Remove excess adhesive before adhesive sets.
- B. Clean exposed resilient base, resilient stair treads, and sheet rubber flooring surfaces. Remove contaminants and stains.
 - 1. Clean with mild detergent. Leave surfaces free of detergent residue.
- C. Polish exposed resilient base to gloss sheen.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Prohibit traffic on resilient stair treads and sheet rubber flooring 72 hours, minimum, after installation.
- B. Protect products from construction traffic and operations.
 - 1. Cover resilient stair treads and sheet rubber flooring with reinforced Kraft paper, and plywood or hardboard.
 - 2. Maintain protection until directed by Contracting Officer.
- C. Replace damaged products and re-clean.
 - 1. Damaged Products include cut, gouged, scraped, torn, and un-bonded products.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09 65 19
RESILIENT TILE FLOORING

1.0 PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION:

- A. This section specifies the installation of solid vinyl tile flooring, luxury vinyl tile, rubber tile and accessories required for a complete installation.

1.2 SUBMITTALS:

- A. Submit in accordance with Statement of Work.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals as described below:
 - 1. Volatile organic compounds per volume as described in PART 2 - PRODUCTS.
 - 2. Postconsumer and pre consumer recycled content as described in PART 2 - PRODUCTS.
- C. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
 - 1. Description of each product.
 - 2. Resilient material manufacturer's recommendations for adhesives, underlayment, primers, and polish.
 - 3. Application, installation and maintenance instructions.
- D. Samples:
 - 1. Tile: Each type, color, thickness and finish.
 - 2. Edge Strips: Each type, color, thickness and finish.
 - 3. Feature Strips: Each type, color, thickness and finish.
- E. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Layout of patterns as shown on the construction documents.
 - 2. Edge strip locations showing types and detail cross sections.
- F. Test Reports:
 - 1. Abrasion resistance: Depth of wear for each tile type and color and volume loss of tile, certified by independent laboratory. Tested per ASTM F510/F510M.
 - 2. Moisture and pH test results, SUBSURFACE PREPARATION FOR FLOOR FINISHES.

1.3 DELIVERY:

- A. Deliver materials to the site in original sealed packages or containers, clearly marked with the manufacturer's name or brand, type and color, production run number and date of manufacture.
- B. Materials from containers which have been distorted, damaged or opened prior to installation are not acceptable.

1.4 STORAGE:

- A. Store materials in a clean, dry, enclosed space off the ground, protected from harmful weather conditions and at temperature and humidity conditions recommended by the manufacturer. Protect adhesives from freezing. Store flooring, adhesives, and accessories in the spaces where they will be installed for at least 48 hours before beginning installation.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

- A. Installer Qualifications: A company specializing in installation with minimum three (3) years' experience and employs experienced flooring installers who have retained, and currently hold, an INSTALL Certification, or a certification from a comparable certification program.
 - 1. Installers to be certified by INSTALL or a comparable certification program with the following minimum criteria:
 - a. US Department of Labor approved four (4) year apprenticeship program, 160 hours a year.
 - b. Career long training.
 - c. Manufacturer endorsed training.
 - d. Fundamental journeyman skills certification.
- B. Mockup: Build floor tile mockup to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Size: 9.3 sq. m (100 sq. ft.) for each type, color, and pattern. Locations as indicated on construction documents.
 - 2. Contracting Officer approved mockup may become part of the completed Project if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- C. Furnish product type materials from the same production run.

1.6 WARRANTY:

- A. Construction Warranty: Comply with FAR clause 52.246-21, "Warranty of Construction".

1.7 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS:

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. ASTM International (ASTM):
 - D2047-11 Test Method for Static Coefficient of Friction of Polish-Coated Flooring Surfaces as Measured by the James Machine
 - D2240-05(R2010) Test Method for Rubber Property—Durometer Hardness
 - D4078-02(R2008) Water Emulsion Floor Finish

E648-14c.....	Critical Radiant Flux of Floor Covering Systems Using a Radiant Energy Source
E662-14.....	Specific Optical Density of Smoke Generated by Solid Materials
E1155/E1155M-14	Determining Floor Flatness and Floor Levelness Numbers
F510/F510M-14.....	Resistance to Abrasion of Resilient Floor Coverings Using an Abrader with a Grit Feed Method
F710-11.....	Preparing Concrete Floors to Receive Resilient Flooring
F925-13.....	Test Method for Resistance to Chemicals of Resilient Flooring
F1344-12(R2013).....	Rubber Floor Tile
F1700-13a.....	Solid Vinyl Floor Tile
F1869-11	Test Method for Measuring Moisture Vapor Emission Rate of Concrete Subfloor Using Anhydrous Calcium Chloride
F2170-11.....	Test Method for Determining Relative Humidity in Concrete Floor Slabs Using in Situ Probes
C. Code of Federal Regulation (CFR):	
40 CFR 59.....	Determination of Volatile Matter Content, Water Content, Density Volume Solids, and Weight Solids of Surface Coating
D. International Standards and Training Alliance (INSTALL)	

2.0 PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS:

- A. Provide adhesives, underlayment, primers, and polish recommended by resilient floor material manufacturer.
- B. Critical Radiant Flux: 0.45 watts per sq. cm or more, Class I, per ASTM E648.
- C. Smoke Density: Less than 450 per ASTM E662.
- D. Slip Resistance – Not less than 0.5 when tested with ASTM D2047.

2.2 RUBBER TILE:

- A. Tile Standard: ASTM F1344, Class I-A, homogeneous rubber tile, solid color.
- B. Hardness: Not less than 85 as required by ASTM F1344 measured using Shore, Type A durometer per ASTM D2240.
- C. Wearing Surface: Hammered.
- D. Thickness: 3.2 mm (0.125 inch).
- E. Size: 610 x 610 mm (24 x 24 inches).

2.3 LUXURY VINYL TILE:

- A. ASTM F1700, Class III, Printed Film Vinyl Tile, Type B.
- B. Thickness: 12 mil (1/8 inch).
- C. Size: 18" x 18".
- D. Provide products with recycled content with not less than 30 percent.
- E. Chemical Resistance: ASTM F925; pass.

2.4 ADHESIVES:

- A. Provide water resistant type adhesive for flooring, base and accessories as recommended by the manufacturer to suit substrate conditions. VOC content to be less than the 50 grams/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59 (EPA Method 24). Submit manufacturer's descriptive data, documentation stating physical characteristics, and mildew and germicidal characteristics.

2.5 PRIMER FOR CONCRETE SUBFLOORS:

- A. Prime concrete subfloors as recommended in writing by floor tile manufacturer.

2.6 POLISH AND CLEANERS:

- A. Cleaners: As recommended in writing by floor tile manufacturer.
- B. Polish: ASTM D4078.

3.0 PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS:

- A. Maintain flooring materials and areas to receive resilient flooring at a temperature above 20 degrees C (68 degrees F) for three (3) days before application, during application and two (2) days after application, unless otherwise directed by the flooring manufacturer for the flooring being installed. Maintain a minimum temperature of 13 degrees C (55 degrees F) thereafter. Provide adequate ventilation to remove moisture from area and to comply with regulations limiting concentrations of hazardous vapors.
- B. Do not install flooring until building is permanently enclosed and wet construction in or near areas to receive tile materials is complete, dry and cured.

3.2 SUBFLOOR TESTING AND PREPARATION:

- A. Prepare and test surfaces to receive resilient tile and adhesive.
 - 1. Remove existing resilient floor and existing adhesive.
- B. Prepare concrete substrates in accordance with ASTM F710.

3.3 INSTALLATION:

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions for application and installation unless specified otherwise.
- B. Mix tile from at least two containers. An apparent line either of shades or pattern variance is not acceptable.

C. Tile Layout:

1. If layout is not shown on construction documents, lay tile symmetrically about center of room or space with joints aligned.
2. Vary edge width as necessary to maintain full size tiles in the field, no edge tile to be less than 1/2 the field tile size, except where irregular shaped rooms make it impossible.
3. Place tile pattern in the same direction; do not alternate tiles unless specifically indicated in the construction documents to the contrary. Match tile installation to approved mockup.

D. Application:

1. Adhere floor tile to flooring substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate to produce a completed installation without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints, telegraphing of adhesive spreader marks, and other surface imperfections.
2. Scribe, cut, and fit floor tiles to butt neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces and permanent fixtures including built-in furniture, cabinets, pipes, outlets, and door frames.
3. Extend floor tiles into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings. Extend floor tiles to center of door openings.
4. Roll tile floor with a minimum 45 kg (100 pound) roller.

E. Seal joints at pipes with sealants in accordance with Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.

F. Installation of Edge Strips:

1. Locate edge strips under center line of doors unless otherwise shown on construction documents.
2. Set resilient edge strips in adhesive. Anchor metal edge strips with anchors and screws.
3. Where tile edge is exposed, butt edge strip to touch along tile edge.
4. Where thin set ceramic tile abuts resilient tile, set edge strip against floor file and against the ceramic tile edge.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION:

- A. Clean adhesive marks on exposed surfaces during the application of resilient materials before the adhesive sets. Exposed adhesive is not acceptable.
- B. Keep traffic off resilient material for a minimum 72 hours after installation.
- C. Clean flooring as recommended in accordance with manufacturer's printed maintenance instructions and within the recommended time frame. As required by the manufacturer, apply the recommended number of coats and type of polish and/or finish in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. When construction traffic occurs over tile, cover resilient materials with reinforced kraft paper properly secured and maintained until removal is directed by CM. At entrances and where wheeled vehicles or carts are used, cover tile with plywood, hardboard, or particle board over paper, secured and maintained until removal is directed by COR.

- E. When protective materials are removed and immediately prior to acceptance, replace damaged tile and mouldings, re-clean resilient materials.

3.5 LOCATION:

- A. Unless otherwise indicated in construction documents, install tile flooring, under areas where casework, laboratory and pharmacy furniture and other equipment occur.
- B. Extend tile flooring for room into adjacent closets and alcoves.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09 68 13
TILE CARPETING

PART1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including the Statement of Work (SOW).

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes modular, carpet tile.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Pre-installation Conference:
 - 1. Review methods and procedures related to carpet tile installation including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Review delivery, storage, and handling procedures.
 - b. Review ambient conditions and ventilation procedures.
 - c. Review subfloor preparation procedures, to include concrete testing and remediation per material manufactures requirements, to be included in installation.
 - d. Follow manufacturer's modular carpet installation guidelines and/or Carpet & Rug Institute Installation Standard (the most recent version), where applicable.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include manufacturer's written specifications and lab documents for any physical testing, to include any concrete substrate remediation requirement.
 - 2. Include installation recommendations for each type of substrate as specified in carpet manufacturer's installation guidelines and/or Carpet & Rug Institute Installation Standard (the most recent version), where applicable.
 - 3. Include carpet maintenance recommendations as outlined by carpet manufacturer.
 - 4. Carpet Manufacturer shall also submit a plan for recycling the specified carpet at the end of the useful life of the carpet.
- B. Samples: For each of the following products and for each color and texture required. Label each Sample with manufacturer's name, material description, color, pattern, and designation indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
 - 1. Carpet Tile: Full-size Sample.
 - 2. Exposed Edge, Transition, and Other Accessory Stripping: 12-inch long Samples.
- C. Product Schedule: For carpet tile. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For carpet tile, for tests performed by a qualified independent testing agency.
- C. Substrate Test Reports: for material required Ph and moisture content in concrete.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For carpet tiles to include in maintenance manuals. Include the

following:

1. Methods for maintaining carpet tile, including cleaning and stain-removal products and procedures and manufacturer's recommended maintenance schedule.
2. Precautions for cleaning materials and methods that could be detrimental to carpet tile.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Carpet Tile: Full-size units equal to 5 percent of amount installed for each type indicated, but not less than 10.67 sq. yd.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Contractor must comply with mandatory use Air Force Furnishings Commodity Council Tier 1 contracts manufacturers. The Carpet Program is covered under North American Industry Classification System (NAICS) code 314110 - Carpet and Rug Mills. The Product Service Code (PSC) for the Carpet Program is 7220 – Floor Coverings.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with carpet manufacturer's installation recommendations and the Carpet & Rug Institute Installation Standard (the most recent version), where applicable.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Comply with carpet manufacturer's installation recommendations and the Carpet & Rug Institute Installation Standard (the most recent version) for temperature, humidity, and ventilation limitations.
- B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install carpet tiles until spaces are enclosed and weather-tight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- C. HVAC system should be operational and running prior to carpet installation and remain running after carpet installation.
- D. Do not install carpet tiles over concrete slabs until slabs have cured and are sufficiently dry to allow bond between adhesive and concrete. Concrete slabs should have moisture and have pH readings that are within the specified tolerance of the adhesive to be used. Any required substrate remediation shall be included in installation.
- E. Where demountable partitions or other items are indicated for installation on top of carpet tiles, install carpet tiles before installing these items.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty for Carpet Tiles: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of carpet tile installation that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty does not include deterioration or failure of carpet tile due to unusual traffic, failure of substrate, vandalism, or abuse.
 2. If substrate remediation is performed, warranty shall be per material manufacturers guidelines.
 3. Failures include, but are not limited to, more than 10 percent face fiber loss, edge

raveling, dimensional instability, excess static discharge, loss of tuft bind strength, delamination, and where face fiber is 100 percent solution dyed, inability to remove acid based stains, lack of colorfastness to light, and lack of colorfastness to atmospheric contaminants.

4. Carpet and fiber must be manufactured and warranted by same manufacturer.
5. Warranty Period: Lifetime Commercial Limited Warranty.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS:

- A. Carpet Tile/plank: Shall comply with mandatory use Air Force Furnishings Commodity Council carpet ordering. Carpet shall be acquired by a small business installer, dealer, or contractor using the following mandatory manufacturers holding Tier 1 contracts:

Approved manufacturers:

1. **Bentley Mills:**
Contract #: FA8003-23-C-0009
POC: Mindy Dever
Office: 626-934-2461
Mobile: 859-536-7846
Email: mindy.dever@bentleymills.com
2. **Engineered Floors:**
Contract #: FA8003-23-C-0004
POC: Debra Ramsey
Phone: 800-241-4586 x88392
Email: contract.team@engineeredfloors.com
3. **Interface Americas:**
Contract #: FA8003-23-C-0005
POC: Jay Lanier
Phone: 800-634-6032 / 336-749-1304
Email: james.lanier@interface.com
Website: <https://www.interface.com/US/en-US/homepage>
4. **Mannington:**
Contract #: FA8003-23-C-0006
POC: Jody Steger
Phone: 800-2412262
Email:
Website: www.manningtoncommercial.com
5. **Milliken:**
Contract #: FA8003-23-C-0008
POC: Tammy Drake
Phone: 706-880-5727
Email: GovOrders@millican.com
6. **Mohawk:**
Contract: FA8003-23-C-0003
POC: Sergio Blanco
Phone: 800-554-6637
Email: contract_compliance@mohawkind.com,
Strategic Account Code: 14459

7. **Tarkett:**
Contract #: FA8003-23-C-0007
POC: Angie Micik
Phone: 706-260-3094
Email: angie.micik@tarkett.com
- B. Contractor to provide selections from the following Manufacturer's pattern / style, or equal, for Base selection:
1. Contractor to choose one of the following: Bentley Mills: Drumline 4DMT40AA1K; Engineered Floors: Indew; Interface Americas: Brescia; Mannington: Exchange 2; Millikin: Nordic Stories; Mohawk: BT355 Riot QS Tile; Tarket: Squareup II 11649. List Manufacturer, pattern and style (include manuf. Product numbers).
 2. All selections must comply with the mandatory use Air Force Furnishings Commodity Council Tier 1 contracts.
- C. Color must be chosen by owner. Confirm pattern / style and color with Contracting Officer. Install per manufacturer recommendations and instructions. Provide attached cushion backing in compliance with NSF/ANSI 140 sustainability standards. Provide low VOC wet adhesive, moisture proof, thermoplastic hard or thermoset backing option with a maximum thickness no greater than 0.250" for modular carpet tile.

2.2 INSTALLATION ACCESSORIES

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- B. Trowelable Adhesives: Water-resistant, mildew-resistant, nonstaining, premium grade pressure-sensitive type to suit products and subfloor conditions indicated, that complies with flammability requirements for installed carpet tile and is recommended by carpet tile manufacturer for releasable installation.
1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content, alkalinity range, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting carpet tile performance. Examine carpet tile for type, color, pattern, and potential defects prior to installation. See manufacturer's requirements for substrate conditions and ambient conditions and remediation requirements, to be included in the installation of material.
- B. Concrete Subfloors: Verify that concrete slabs comply with ASTM F 710 and the following:
1. Slab substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, hardeners, and other materials that may interfere with adhesive bond. Determine adhesion and dryness characteristics by performing moisture and pH tests as recommended by carpet tile manufacturer and any remediation required shall be included in the installation.
 2. Subfloors are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits.
 3. Lightweight concrete and gypcrete subfloors may require a primer. Provide and install primer as recommended by the flooring manufacture to reduce surface porosity.
 4. Where previous surface treatments are unknown, or where other concerns exist as to the ability of the adhesive to bond to the substrate, a 24 hour bond test is

recommended.

- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. General: Comply with Carpet & Rug Institute Installation Standard (the most recent version), "Site Conditions; Floor Preparation," and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions for preparing substrates indicated to receive carpet tile installation, to include any remediation required by manufacturer.
- B. Use trowelable leveling and patching compounds that contain a cementitious base with a latex additive, according to manufacturer's written instructions, to fill cracks, holes, depressions, and protrusions in substrates. Fill or level cracks, holes and depressions 1/8 inch wide or wider and protrusions more than 1/32 inch unless more stringent requirements are required by manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Remove coatings, including curing compounds, and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, without using solvents. Use mechanical methods recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.
- D. Broom and vacuum clean substrates to be covered immediately before installing carpet tile.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with Carpet & Rug Institute Installation Standard (the most recent version), "Carpet Modules," and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions, to include any required substrate remediation.
- B. Installation Method: Glue down; install every tile with full-spread, releasable, pressure-sensitive adhesive or with a non-spreadable dry adhesive system, such as LokDots. Any non-spreadable adhesive system must adhere the carpet to the substrate.
- C. Maintain dye lot integrity. Do not mix dye lots in same area unless the specific carpet tile style is manufactured as a merge-able dye lot product.
- D. Cut and fit carpet tile to butt tightly to vertical surfaces, permanent fixtures, and built-in furniture including cabinets, pipes, outlets, edgings, thresholds, and nosings. Bind or seal cut edges as recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- E. Extend carpet tile into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, open-bottomed obstructions, removable flanges, alcoves, and similar openings.
- F. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on finish flooring as marked on subfloor. Use nonpermanent, non-staining marking device.
- G. Install pattern parallel to walls and borders.
- H. Roll the entire installation with a 75 lb roller once installation is completed.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Perform the following operations immediately after installing carpet tile:
 - 1. Remove excess adhesive, and other surface blemishes using cleaner recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
 - 2. Remove yarns that protrude from carpet tile surface.
 - 3. Vacuum carpet tile using commercial machine with face-beater element.
- B. Protect installed carpet tile to comply with Carpet & Rug Institute Installation Standard (the most recent version), "Protecting Indoor Installations."
- C. When construction or move-in activities will continue where new carpet is installed, provide non-staining building material paper to protect carpet. Do not use plastic sheeting as it can trap moisture, and self-sticking plastic sheeting can transfer adhesive residue to carpet that will attract soil.
- D. When heavy objects are moved over carpet within 24 hours of installation, use plywood

over carpet to prevent buckling and wrinkling.

- E. Protect carpet tile against damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during the remainder of construction period. Use protection methods indicated or recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09 91 00

PAINT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Interior Primer.
- B. Interior Paint.
- C. Wall/Ceiling Preparation.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. MPI (APL) - Master Painters Institute.
- B. SCAQMD 1168 - South Coast Air Quality Management District Rule #1168; October 3, 2003.
- C. SSPC (PM1) - Steel Structures Painting Manual, Vol. 1, Good Painting Practice; Society for Protective Coatings; 1993, Third Edition.
- D. SSPC (PM2) - Steel Structures Painting Manual, Vol. 2, Systems and Specifications; Society for Protective Coatings; 1995, Seventh Edition.
- E. 40 CFR 59, Subpart D - National Volatile Organic Compound Emission Standards for Architectural Coatings; U.S. Environmental Protection Agency; current edition.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Paints are available in a wide range of sheens or glosses, as measured by a gloss meter from a 60 degree angle from vertical, as a percentage of the amount of light that is reflected. The following terms are used to describe the gloss of our products.
 - 1. Flat - Less than 5 units.
 - 2. Matte - 0 - 10 units.
 - 3. Eggshell - 10 - 25 units.
 - 4. Satin - 20 - 35 units.
 - 5. Semi-Gloss - 35 - 70 units.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with the statement of work.
- B. Coordinate with the Statement of Work for submittal procedures.
- C. Product Data: Provide a complete list of all products to be used, with the following information for each:
 - 1. Manufacturer's name, product name and/or catalog number, and general product category.
 - 2. Cross-reference to specified paint system(s) that the product is to be used in; include description of each system.
- D. Samples: Submit three paper samples, 5 inches by 7 inches (127mm x 178mm) in size, illustrating selected colors for each color and system selected with specified coats cascaded.
- E. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate special surface preparation procedures.
- F. Maintenance Data: Submit data on cleaning, touch-up, and repair of painted and coated surfaces.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: a single manufacturer with a minimum of ten (10) years' experience will supply all primary products specified in this section.
- B. Installer Qualifications: All products listed in this section are to be installed by a single installer with a minimum of five (5) years demonstrated experience in installing products of the same type and scope as specified.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.
- B. Store and dispose of solvent-based materials, and materials used with solvent-based materials, in accordance with requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Disposal:
 - 1. Never pour leftover coating down any sink or drain. Use up material on the job or seal can and store safely for future use.
 - 2. Do not incinerate closed containers.
 - 3. For specific disposal or recycle guidelines, contact the local waste management agency or district. Recycle whenever possible.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. At project closeout, provide to the Owner or owner's representative an executed copy of the Manufacturer's standard form outlining the terms and conditions of and any exclusions to their Limited Warranty against Manufacturing Defect.

1.10 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. At project closeout, supply the Owner or owner's representative one gallon of each product for touch-up purposes.
- B. At project closeout, provide the color mixture name and code to the Owner or owner's representative for accurate future color matching.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer:
 - 1. PPG Paints
 - 2. Benjamin Moore & Co Approved Manufacturers
 - 3. Sherwin Williams
 - 4. Equal to.

2.2 MATERIALS – GENERAL

- A. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Content:
 - 1. Provide coatings that comply with the most stringent requirements specified in the following:

- a. 40 CFR 59, Subpart D--National Volatile Organic Compound Emission Standards for Architectural Coatings.
- b. Determination of VOC Content: Testing and calculation in accordance with 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24), exclusive of colorants added to a tint base and water added at project site; or other method acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. B. Compatibility: Provide materials that are compatible with one another and the substrates indicated under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

2.3 MIXING AND TINTING

- A. Except where specifically noted in this section, all paint shall be ready-mixed and pre-tinted. Agitate all paint prior to and during application to ensure uniform color, gloss, and consistency.
- B. Thinner addition shall not exceed manufacturer's printed recommendations. Do not use kerosene or other organic solvents to thin water-based paints.
- C. Where paint is to be sprayed, thin according to manufacturer's current guidelines.

2.4 INTERIOR PRIMERS - NEW CONSTRUCTION

- A. Gypsum Board, Plaster:
 1. Latex:
 - a. One (1) Coat - Equal to Ultra Spec® 500 Interior Latex Primer #N534 (MPI listed Product, Categories 50, 50-X, 149, 149-X)
- B. Ferrous Metals:
 1. Alkyd:
 - a. One (1) Coat - Equal to Super Spec® HP Alkyd Metal Primer #P06.

2.5 INTERIOR PRIMERS - PREVIOUSLY PAINTED SURFACES

- A. Previously Painted:
 1. Latex:
 - a. One (1) Coat - Equal to Ultra Spec® 500 Interior Latex Primer #N534 (MPI listed Product, Categories 50, 50-X, 149, 149-X)
- B. Ferrous Metals:
 1. Alkyd:
 - a. One (1) Coat - Equal to Super Spec® HP Alkyd Metal Primer #P06.

2.6 INTERIOR FINISH COAT

- A. Satin/Semi-Gloss Finish:
 1. Latex:
 - a. Two (2) Coats –Equal to Ultra Spec® 500 Interior Semi-Gloss Finish N539 (MPI Listed Product Categories 43, 43-X Green)
 - b. Two (2) Coats Ultra Spec® 500 Interior Gloss Finish N540 (MPI Listed Product Categories 54, 54-X Green)
- B. High Gloss Finish (Metals):
 1. Latex:
 - a. Two (2) Coats Equal to Super Spec HP® D.T.M. Acrylic Gloss Enamel P28 (MPI Listed #114, 154)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly prepared.
- B. Ensure that surfaces to receive paint are dry immediately prior to application.
- C. Ensure that moisture-retaining substrates to receive paint have moisture content within tolerances allowed by coating manufacturer. Where exceeding the following values, promptly notify Contracting Officer and obtain direction before beginning work.
 - 1. Concrete and Masonry: 13 percent. Allow new concrete to cure a minimum of 28 days.
 - 2. Exterior Wood: 17 percent.
 - 3. Interior Wood: 15 percent.
 - 4. Interior Finish Detail Woodwork, Including Trim, and Casework: 10 percent.
 - 5. Plaster and Gypsum: 15 percent.
 - 6. Concrete Slab-On-Grade: Perform calcium chloride test over 24 hour period or other acceptable test to manufacturer. Verify acceptable moisture transmission and pH levels.
- B. Examine surfaces to receive coatings for surface imperfections and contaminants that could impair performance or appearance of coatings, including but not limited to, loose primer, rust, scale, oil, grease, mildew, algae, or fungus, stains or marks, cracks, indentations, or abrasions.
- C. Correct conditions that could impair performance or appearance of coatings in accordance with specified surface preparation procedures before proceeding with coating application.

3.2 PREPARATION – GENERAL

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to coating application.
- B. Do not start work until surfaces to be finished are in proper condition to produce finished surfaces of uniform, satisfactory appearance.
- C. Stains and Marks: Remove completely, if possible, using materials and methods recommended by coating manufacturer; cover stains and marks which cannot be completely removed with isolating primer or sealer recommended by coating manufacturer to prevent bleed-through.
- D. Remove Mildew, Algae, and Fungus using materials and methods recommended by coating manufacturer.
- E. Remove dust and loose particulate matter from surfaces to receive coatings immediately prior to coating application.
- F. Remove or protect adjacent hardware, electrical equipment plates, mechanical grilles and louvers, lighting fixture trim, and other items not indicated to receive coatings.
- G. Move or protect equipment and fixtures adjacent to surfaces indicated to receive coatings to allow application of coatings.
- H. Protect adjacent surfaces not indicated to receive coatings.
- I. Prepare surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's instructions for specified coatings and indicated materials, using only methods and materials recommended by coating manufacturer.

3.3 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Concrete and Concrete Masonry: Clean surfaces free of loose particles, sand, efflorescence, laitance, form oil, curing compounds, and other substances which could impair coating performance or appearance.
- B. Existing Coatings:

1. Remove surface irregularities by scraping or sanding to produce uniform substrate for coating application; apply one coat primer of type recommended by coating manufacturer for maximum coating adhesion.
 2. If presence of lead in existing coatings is suspected, cease surface preparation and notify Contracting Officer immediately.
- C. Gypsum Board: Repair cracks, holes and other surface defects with joint compound to produce surface flush with adjacent surfaces.
- D. Metals - Aluminum, Mill-Finish: Clean and etch surfaces with a phosphoric acid- water solution or water based industrial cleaner. Flush with clean water and allow to dry, before applying primer coat.
- E. Metals - Ferrous, Unprimed: Remove rust or scale, if present, by wire brush cleaning, power tool cleaning, or sandblast cleaning; remove grease, oil, and other contaminants which could impair coating performance or appearance by solvent cleaning, with phosphoric-acid solution cleaning of welds, bolts and nuts; spot-prime repaired welds with specified primer.
- F. Metals - Ferrous, Shop-Primed: Remove loose primer and rust, if present, by scraping and sanding, feathering edges of cleaned areas to produce uniform flat surface; solvent-clean surfaces and spotprime bare metal with specified primer, feathering edges to produce uniform flat surface.
- G. Metals - Galvanized Steel (not passivated): Clean with a water-based industrial strength cleaner, apply an adhesion promoter followed by a clean water rinse. Alternately, wipe down surfaces using clean, lint-free cloths saturated with xylene or lacquer thinner; followed by wiping the surface dry using clean, lint-free cloths.
- H. Metals - Galvanized Steel, Passivated: Clean with water-based industrial strength cleaner. After the surface has been prepared, apply recommended primer to a small area. Allow primer to cure for 7 days, and test adhesion using the "cross-hatch adhesion tape test" method in accordance with ASTM D 3359. If the adhesion of the primer is positive, proceed with a recommended coating system for galvanized metal.
- I. Wood:
1. Seal knots, pitch streaks, and sap areas with sealer recommended by coating manufacturer; fill nail recesses and cracks with filler recommended by coating manufacturer; sand surfaces smooth.
 2. Apply primer coat to back of wood trim and paneling.

3.4 APPLICATION – GENERAL

- A. Apply each coat to uniform coating thickness in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, not exceeding manufacturer's specified maximum spread rate for indicated surface; thins, brush marks, roller marks, orange-peel, or other application imperfections are not permitted.
- B. Allow manufacturer's specified drying time, and ensure correct coating adhesion, for each coat before applying next coat.
- C. Inspect each coat before applying next coat; touch-up surface imperfections with coating material, feathering, and sanding if required; touch-up areas to achieve flat, uniform surface without surface defects visible from 39".
- D. Remove dust and other foreign materials from substrate immediately prior to applying each coat.
- E. Where paint application abuts other materials or other coating color, terminate coating with a clean sharp termination line without coating overlap.
- F. Where color changes occur between adjoining spaces, through framed openings that are of same color as adjoining surfaces, change color at outside stop corner nearest to face of closed door.
- G. Re-prepare and re-coat unsatisfactory finishes; refinish entire area to corners or other natural terminations.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean excess coating materials, and coating materials deposited on surfaces not indicated to receive coatings, as construction activities of this section progress; do not allow to dry.
- B. Re-install hardware, electrical equipment plates, mechanical grilles and louvers, lighting fixture trim, and other items that have been removed to protect from contact with coatings.
- C. Reconnect equipment adjacent to surfaces indicated to receive coatings.
- D. Relocate to original position equipment and fixtures that have been moved to allow application of coatings.
- E. Remove protective materials.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect completed coating applications from damage by subsequent construction activities.
- B. Repair to Contracting Officer's acceptance coatings damaged by subsequent construction activities. Where repairs cannot be made to Contracting Officer's acceptance, re- apply finish coating to nearest adjacent change of surface plane, in both horizontal and vertical directions.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09 93 23
STAINS AND TRANSPARENT FINISHES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Exterior and Interior coating with transparent and semi-transparent finishes.

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. SSPC-SP 1 - Solvent Cleaning.
- B. SSPC-SP 2 - Hand Tool Cleaning.
- C. SSPC-SP 3 - Power Tool Cleaning.
- D. SSPC-SP 13 / NACE No. 6 Surface Preparation for Concrete.
- E. EPA-Method 24

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Statement of Work.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each paint and coating product should include:
 - 1. Product characteristics
 - 2. Surface preparation instructions and recommendations
 - 3. Primer requirements and finish specification
 - 4. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations
 - 5. Application methods
 - 6. Cautions
- C. Selection Samples: Submit a complete set of color chips that represent the full range of manufacture's color samples available.
- D. Verification Samples: For each finish product specified, submit samples that represent actual product, color, and sheen.

1.4 MOCK-UP

- A. Include a mock-up if the project size and/or quality warrant taking such a precaution. The following is one example of how a mock-up on a large project might be specified. When deciding on the extent of the mock-up, consider all the major different types of painting on the project.
 - 1. Finish surfaces for verification of products, colors, & sheens
 - 2. Finish area designated by Contracting Officer
 - 3. Provide samples that designate prime & finish coats
 - 4. Do not proceed with remaining work until the Contracting Officer approves the mock-up samples

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery: Deliver manufacturer's unopened containers to the work site. Packaging shall bear the manufacture's name, label, and the following list of information:
 - 1. Product name, and type (description)
 - 2. Application & use instructions
 - 3. Surface preparation
 - 4. VOC content
 - 5. Environmental issues
 - 6. Batch date

7. Color number

- B. Storage: Store and dispose of solvent-based materials, and materials used with solvent-based materials, in accordance with requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction. Store materials in an area that is within the acceptable temperature range, per manufacturer's instructions. Protect from freezing.
- C. Handling: Maintain a clean, dry storage area, to prevent contamination or damage to the coatings.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not apply coatings under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - 1. Benjamin Moore Company
 - 2. Sherwin-Williams Company
 - 3. Equal to.
- B. Substitutions: Requests for substitutions will be considered in accordance with provisions of Section 016000 Product Requirements. When submitting request for substitution, provide complete product data specified above under Submittals, for each substitute product.

2.2 APPLICATIONS/SCOPE

- A. Surfaces To Be Coated:
 - 1. Wood Interior Systems - Transparent

2.3 SCHEDULE

- A. Wood Interior Systems (vertical) - Semi-Transparent
 - 1. Polyurethane (topcoat)
 - a. Semi-Transparent Stain
 - 1st Coat: Equal to S-W WoodClassics Oil Stain, A49 Series(450-500 sq ft/gal)
 - 2nd Coat: Equal to S-W WoodClassics Polyurethane Varnish, A67 Series
 - 3rd Coat: Equal to S-W WoodClassics Polyurethane Varnish, A67 Series (350-400 sq ft/gal)

2.4 MATERIALS - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Paints and Coatings - General:
 - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide factory-mixed coatings. When required, mix coatings to correct consistency in accordance with manufacturer's instructions before application. Do not reduce, thin, or dilute coatings or add materials to coatings unless such procedure is specifically described in manufacturer's product instructions.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Coating Application Accessories:
 - 1. Provide all sealers, cleaning agents, cleaning cloths, sanding materials, and clean-up materials required, per manufacturer's specifications.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Do not begin application of coatings until substrates have been properly prepared. Notify Architect of unsatisfactory conditions before proceeding.
- B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Contracting Officer of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.
- C. Proceed with work only after conditions have been corrected and approved by all parties, otherwise application of coatings will be considered as an acceptance of surface conditions.

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Proper product selection, surface preparation, and application affect coating performance. Coating integrity and service life will be reduced because of improperly prepared surfaces. Selection and implementation of proper surface preparation ensures coating adhesion to the substrate and prolongs the service life of the coating system.
- B. Selection of the proper method of surface preparation depends on the substrate, the environment, and the expected service life of the coating system. Economics, surface contamination, and the effect on the substrate will also influence the selection of surface preparation methods.
- C. The surface must be dry and in sound condition. Remove oil, dust, dirt, loose rust, peeling paint or other contamination to ensure good adhesion.
- D. Remove mildew before painting by washing with a solution of 1 part liquid household bleach and 3 parts of warm water. Apply the solution and scrub the mildewed area. Allow the solution to remain on the surface for 10 minutes. Rinse thoroughly with clean water and allow the surface to dry 48 hours before painting. Wear protective glasses or goggles, waterproof gloves, and protective clothing. Quickly wash off any of the mixture that comes in contact with your skin. Do not add detergents or ammonia to the bleach/water solution.
- E. Surface Preparation
 - 1. Wood—Interior: All surfaces must be sanded smooth, with the grain, never across it. Surface blemishes must be corrected and the area cleaned of dust before coating. Patching compounds will generally be visible through clear coatings.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Testing: Due to the wide variety of substrates, preparation methods, application methods and environments, one should test the product in an inconspicuous spot for adhesion and compatibility prior to full-scale application.
- B. Apply all coatings and materials with manufacturer's specifications in mind. Mix and thin coatings according to manufacturer's recommendation.
- C. Do not apply to wet or damp surfaces. Wait until wood is fully dry after rain, fog or dew.
- D. Apply coatings using methods recommended by manufacturer.
- E. Uniformly apply coatings without runs, drips, or sags, without brush marks, and with consistent sheen.
- F. Apply coatings at spreading rate required to achieve the manufacturer's recommended dry film thickness.
- G. Regardless of number of coats specified, apply as many coats as necessary for complete hide and uniform appearance.
- H. Inspection: The coated surface must be inspected and approved by the Contracting Officer just prior to each coat.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finished coatings from damage until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up damaged coatings after substantial completion, following manufacturer's recommendation for touch-up or repair of damaged coatings. Repair any defects that will hinder the performance of the coatings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 10 11 00
VISUAL DISPLAY UNITS

1.1 SUBMITTALS

Submit in accordance with the Statement of Work.

1.2 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver materials to the building site in the manufacturer's original unopened containers and store them in a clean dry area with temperature maintained above 10 degrees C 50 degrees F. Stack materials according to manufacturer's recommendations. Allow visual display units to acclimate to the building temperature for 24 hours prior to installation.

1.3 WARRANTY

Provide manufacturer's warranty to repair or replace defective materials and workmanship for period of one year from date of final acceptance of the work.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

Submit in accordance with the Statement of work.

2.1.1 Cork : Provide a continuous resilient sheet made from soft, clean, granulated cork relatively free from hardback and dust and bonded with a binder suitable for the purpose intended; wearing surface to be free from streaks, spots, cracks or other imperfections that would impair its usefulness or appearance. Provide seasoned material and a clean cut made not less than 13 mm 1/2 inch from the edge and must show no evidence of soft sticky binder.

2.1.2 Aluminum: Provide a minimum 1.5 mm 0.06 inch thick, 6063-T5 or 6063-T6 aluminum alloy frame extrusion conforming to ASTM B221M ASTM B221. Exposed aluminum must have satin finish. Use straight, single lengths wherever possible and keep joints to a minimum. Provide mitered corners with a hairline closure.

2.1.3 Glass: Provide tempered glass in accordance with ANSI Z97.1 and ASTM C1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated), Type I, Class I (clear), thickness as specified.

2.2 TACKBOARDS

2.2.1 Cork: Provide tackboard consisting of a minimum 6 mm 1/4 inch thick natural cork laminated to a minimum 6 mm 1/4 inch thick hardboard, and an aluminum frame.

2.3 BOARD CASE:

Provide surface mounted board case with hinged minimum 5 mm 3/16 inch thick tempered glass doors that are lockable. Provide an aluminum case with mitered corners reinforced for rigidity. Provide doors equipped with continuous piano hinges. Door glass framed with the case material, and reinforced at all corners. Door framing does not depend upon the glass for rigidity.

Multiple door cases with an elbow catch. The interior side of the back panel is tackable and composed of a minimum 6 mm 1/4 inch cork

Provide two keys for each unit.

Color to be determined by Contracting Officer.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PLACEMENT SCHEDULE

Location, size and mounting height of visual display units based on match existing.

3.2 INSTALLATION

Do not install items that show visual evidence of biological growth. Perform installation and assembly in accordance with manufacturer's printed installation instructions. Use concealed fasteners. Attach visual display units to the walls with suitable devices to anchor each unit. Furnish and install trim items, accessories and miscellaneous items in total, including but not limited to hardware, grounds, clips, backing materials, adhesives, brackets, and anchorages incidental to or necessary for a sound, secure, complete and finished installation. Do not initiate installation until completion of room painting and finishing operations.

Install visual display units in locations and at mounting heights indicated. Install visual display units level and plumb, and if applicable align doors and adjust hardware. Repair or replace damaged units as directed by the Contracting Officer.

3.3 CLEANING

Clean writing surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's cleaning instructions.

-- END OF SECTION --

SECTION 10 26 00
WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. This section specifies corner guards.

1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Manufacturer with a minimum of three (3) years' experience in providing items of type specified.
 - 1. Obtain wall protection from single manufacturer.
- B. Installer's Qualifications: Installers are to have a minimum of three (3) years' experience in the installation of units required for this project.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with the Statement of Work.
- B. Shop Drawings: show design and installation details.
- C. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
 - 1. Corner Guards.
- D. Test Report: Showing that resilient material complies with specified fire and safety code requirements.
- E. Manufacturer's qualifications.
- F. Installer's qualifications.
- G. Manufacturer's warranty.

1.4 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

- A. Deliver materials to the site in original sealed packages or containers marked with the name and brand, or trademark of the manufacturer.
- B. Protect from damage from handling and construction operations before, during and after installation.
- C. Store in a dry environment of approximately 21 degrees C (70 degrees F) for at least 48 hours prior to installation.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Construction Warranty: Comply with FAR clause 52.246-21 "Warranty of Construction".
- B. Manufacturer Warranty: Manufacturer shall warranty their wall and door protection for a minimum of five (5) years from date of installation and final acceptance by the Government. Submit manufacturer warranty.

1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. publications listed below form a part of this specification to extent referenced. publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.
- B. ASTM International (ASTM):
 - A240/A240M-20Chromium and Chromium-Nickel Stainless Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip for Pressure Vessels and For General Applications
 - B221-14.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes
 - B221M-13.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes (Metric)
 - D256-10(2018)Determining the Izod Pendulum Impact Resistance of Plastics
 - D635-18Rate of Burning and/or Extent and Time of Burning of Plastics in a Horizontal Position
 - E84-20.....Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
- C. Aluminum Association (AA):
 - DAF 45-09.....Designation System for Aluminum Finishes
- D. American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA):
 - 611-14Voluntary Specification for Anodized Architectural Aluminum
- E. Code of Federal Regulation (CFR):
 - 40 CFR 59(2020) Subpart D National Volatile Organic Compound Emission Standards for Architectural Coatings
- F. The National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM):
 - AMP 500-06Metal Finishes Manual
- G. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
 - 80-2019Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives
- H. SAE International (SAE):
 - J 1545-2014-10Instrumental Color Difference Measurement for Exterior Finishes, Textiles and Colored Trim.
- I. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL):
 - Annual IssueBuilding Materials Directory

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Resilient Material:
 - 1. Provide resilient material consisting of high impact resistant extruded acrylic vinyl, polyvinyl chloride, or injection molded thermal plastic conforming to the following:

- a. Minimum impact resistance of 960.8 N-m/m (18 feet-pounds/square inch) when tested in accordance with ASTM D256 (Izod impact, feet-pounds per inch notched).
- b. Class 1 fire rating when tested in accordance with ASTM E84, having a maximum flame spread of 25 and a smoke developed rating of 450 or less.
- c. Rated self-extinguishing when tested in accordance with ASTM D635.
- d. Provide material labeled and tested by Underwriters Laboratories or other approved independent testing laboratory.
- e. Provide resilient material for protection on fire rated doors and frames assemblies that is listed by the testing laboratory performing the tests.
- f. Provide resilient material installed on fire rated wood/steel door and frame assemblies that have been tested on similar type assemblies. Test results of material tested on any other combination of door and frame assembly are not acceptable.
- g. Provide integral color with colored components matched in accordance with SAE J 1545 to within plus or minus 1.0 on the CIE-LCH scales.

2.2 CORNER GUARDS

- A. Resilient, Shock-Absorbing Corner Guards: Surface mounted type.
 1. Snap-on corner guard formed from resilient material, minimum 1.98 mm (0.078-inch) thick, free floating on a continuous 1.52 mm (0.060-inch) thick extruded aluminum retainer. Provide appropriate mounting hardware, cushions and base plates as required.
 2. Profile: Minimum 76 mm (3 inch) long leg and 6 mm (1/4 inch) corner radius.
 3. Height: 1.22 m (4 feet).
 4. Retainer Clips: Provide manufacturer's standard impact-absorbing clips.
 5. Provide factory fabricated end closure caps at top and bottom of surface mounted corner guards.

2.3 FASTENERS AND ANCHORS

- A. Provide fasteners and anchors as required for each specific type of installation.
- B. Where type, size, spacing or method of fastening is not shown or specified in construction documents, submit shop drawings showing proposed installation details.

2.4 FINISH

- A. Resilient Material: Embossed textures and color as approved by the Contracting Officer.

PART 3 - INSTALLATION

3.1 RESILIENT CORNER GUARDS

- A. Secure guards to walls with mounting cushions, brackets and fasteners in accordance with manufacturer's details and instructions.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 10 28 19
TUB AND SHOWER ENCLOSURES

PART 1 GENERAL

General: Submit the following in accordance with Statement of Work.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Provide products of the same manufacturer for each type of accessory unit and for units exposed in the same area.
- B. Submit shop drawings.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not deliver components to site until rooms in which they are to be installed are ready to receive them.
- B. Store all materials to prevent physical damage or wetting.
- C. Maintain protective covers on all units until final clean-up.
- D. Protection: Protect adjacent or adjoining finished surfaces and work from damage during installation of work of this Section.

1.06 WARRANTY

- A. Work of this Section shall be jointly warrantied by the manufacturer and the installer for a period of one year after final payment. Any material or workmanship that is judged defective during this period shall be replaced at no cost to the Owner.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Lighthouse Marble or equal.

2.02 MATERIALS

- A. 18-8 (Type 302) stainless steel alloy of at least 22 gauge. Unless shown otherwise, all exposed stainless steel to have a #4 Satin finish or Satin chrome finish where applicable with all elements of a unit to have brushing in one direction.
- B. Exposed surfaces to be protected with a factory applied PVC film to be left in place until final clean-up.
- C. Stainless steel tubing: 18 ga., Type 304, seamless welded.
- D. Glazing: Safety glazing materials complying with 16 CFR 1201, Category II, with permanently etched identification acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. Provide frameless glass panels with mounting and operating hardware of types and sizes required to support imposed loads.

- F. Fasteners, screws, and bolts: Hot dip galvanized. Expansion shields: Fiber, lead, or rubber as recommended by accessory manufacturer for component substrate. G. Adhesive: Epoxy type contact cement.

2.03 FIXED GLASS PANEL AT SHOWER

- A. Lighthouse Marble or equal
 - 1. Glass Fixed Panel:
 - a. 3/8" thick glass: Clear, tempered, polished edges.
 - b. Size: Refer to Drawings for width and height.
 - 2. U Channels for Fixed Panel: (One side of glass panel):
 - a. Finish: Polished Chrome (Bright Anodized)
 - 3. Fasteners: All fasteners to be by the manufacturer.
 - 4. Adhesives: Type as per manufacturer's recommendations.
 - 5. Sealant: Silicone type as per manufacturer's recommendations

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Deliver inserts and rough-in frames to job site and in appropriate time for building-in. Provide templates and rough-in measurements as required.
- B. Before starting work, notify Owner's Representative in writing of any conflicts detrimental to installation or operation of units.
- C. Set units level, plumb, and true to line, without warp or rack of frames and panels, and anchor securely in place.
- D. Fasten components securely in place, with provisions for thermal movement. Install with concealed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Install components to drain and return water to tub or shower.
- F. Install doors to produce smooth operation and tight fit at contact points.
- G. Verify with Owner's Representative exact location of accessories.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install all enclosures in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions.
- B. Use concealed fastenings wherever possible.
- C. Install true, plumb, and level, securely, and rigidly anchored to substrate in accordance with manufacturer's instructions for each item and each type of substrate construction.
 - 1. Wood blocking shall be provided at grab bars and fold down shower seats, and as shown on Drawings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 10 40 00

IDENTIFYING DEVICES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with the Statement of Work. All dorm rooms only for signage.

1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. All identifying devices shall comply with requirements of 36 CFR 1191 "Americans with Disabilities Act Accessory Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities".
- B. Manufacturer specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section. Obtain signs from one source and a single manufacturer.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. Interior Room ID Panel Signs:
 - 1. Basis of Design as manufactured by SA Signs LLC, (Contact: Scotty Jurich at 228 354 8002). Or equal.

2.2 ROOM IDENTIFICATION SIGNS

- B. It is the intent of these specifications to establish a sign standard for the primary dorm room identification signage only. While the Owner may or may not obtain other signs or sign types, the signage contractor, if required, shall design and submit for approval.
- C. Material: All interior signage to match material & overall design of new signage at buildings 6965 & 7404. Sign design consists of:
 - 1. Backer Piece: 0.125" thick Single-ply modified acrylic. Size: 13" H x 7.25" W with four (4) .1875" holes at 0.4" radius corners.
 - 2. Face Piece: 0.125" thick Single-ply modified acrylic. Size: 11" H x 5" W with .4" radius corners, attached and centered on Backer piece.
 - 3. Colors: Selected by Contracting Officer from manufacturers range of colors.
 - 4. Mounting: Mount with four (4) tamper resistant stainless steel screws.
 - 5. Location: At each dorm room. To match existing location and height.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Room Identification Signs: Mount on wall by opening adjacent to latch side of door in accordance with ABA/ADA requirements, 60" max. above the finished floor, measured from the bottom of the highest tactile character. Attach to wall with tamper resistant stainless steel screws with anchors, if necessary, for mounting.

3.2 CLEANING

- A. Upon completion all identifying devices shall be undamaged, level, plumb, true to line and securely anchored.
- B. Clean all exposed surfaces and protect to prevent damage during remainder of construction period.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 10 80 10
TOILET AND BATH ACCESSORIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Provide toilet and other accessory items in locations as indicated on the Drawings and as specified herein.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- 1. Submit in accordance with the Statement of Work.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Inserts and anchorages: Furnish inserts and anchoring devices that must be set in gypsum board walls, concrete or built into masonry; coordinate delivery with other work to avoid delay.
- B. Accessory Locations: Coordinate accessory locations with other work to avoid interference and to assure proper operation and servicing of accessory units.
- C. Single-Source Responsibility: Provide products of same manufacturer for each type of accessory unit and for units exposed to view in same areas, unless otherwise acceptable to Contracting Officer.
- D. Comply with 36 CFR 1191 "American Barriers Act/Americans with Disabilities Act Accessory Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities" including requirement regarding location and installed structural strength of grab bars.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. Bobrick Washroom Equipment
- B. American Specialties Inc (ASI) – Profile Collection only
- C. Bradley Corporation
- D. Equal as approved

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel: AISI Type 304, with polished No. 4 finish, 22 gauge minimum thickness, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same materials as accessory unit or of galvanized steel where concealed.
- C. Keys: Unless otherwise indicated, provide universal keys for access to toilet accessory units requiring internal access for servicing, resupply, etc. Provide minimum of 6-keys to Government and obtain receipt.

2.3 FRAMED MIRROR

- A. Welded Frame Glass Mirror, 24"x30": B-290 (Or Equal)
- B. Mirror Glass: Nominal 6.0 mm thick, conforming to ASTM C1036, Type I, Class 1, Quality q2, and with silvering, electro-plated copper coating, and protective organic coating. Provide with continuous edge sealer prior to installation in frame.
- C. Frame: Heavy-gauge stainless steel, 3/4" x 3/4" (19 x 19mm) angle with satin finish.
- D. Install according to manufacturer's recommendations.

- 2.4 SINGLE ROLL TOILET TISSUE DISPENSER (Dorm Room Bathrooms)
- A. Single Roll Toilet Tissue Dispenser (Satin finish): B-6857 (Or Equal)
 - B. Provide non-locking spindle
 - C. Flange and support arms shall be type-304 22-gauge stainless steel with concealed 16 gauge stainless steel mounting bracket.
 - D. Spindle: Chrome-plated plastic equipped with internal heavy-duty spring. (non-locking)
 - E. Install according to manufacturer's recommendations.
- 2.5 DOUBLE TOILET TISSUE DISPENSER (Public Areas Only)
- A. Multi Roll Toilet Tissue Dispenser: Bobrick No. B-4288 (Or Equal)
 - B. Fabricate of stainless steel with all-welded construction; exposed surfaces shall have satin finish. Door shall be secured to cabinet with two rivets and equipped with a flush tumbler lock. Unit shall dispense two standard-core toilet tissue rolls up to 5-1/4" diameter. Extra roll shall automatically drop in place when bottom roll is depleted. Spindles shall be theft-resistant, one-piece, molded ABS.
 - C. Mountings: Concealed type, manufacturer's standard.
 - D. Mounting Height: (Per ABA/ADA requirements in handicap units), 28" to top of unit.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Installer must examine substrates, previously placed inserts and anchorages necessary for mounting of toilet accessories and other conditions under which installation is to occur, and must notify Contractor in writing of conditions detrimental to proper and timely completion of work. Do not proceed with work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in manner acceptable to installer.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install toilet accessory units in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, using fasteners which are appropriate to substrate and recommended by manufacturer of unit. Install units plumb and level, firmly anchored in locations indicated.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust toilet accessories for proper operation and verify that mechanisms function smoothly.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean and polish all exposed surfaces after removing protective coatings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 12 36 00
COUNTERTOPS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. The work required under this Section consists of solid surface countertops, millwork, windowsills, and adhesives, sealants, accessories, and related items to complete the work as indicated on the Drawings and described in the Specifications. Related Documents:

Section 06100: Rough Carpentry
Section 06200: Finish Carpentry
Section 066500: Solid Surface Fabrications

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit the following in accordance with the statement of work.
1. SD-02 Shop Drawings
 - a. Fabrication
 - b. Installation Drawings
 2. SD-03 Product Data
 - a. Solid Surface
 - b. Adhesives
 - c. Filler Material
 - d. Fasteners
 - e. Service Fixtures
 - f. Accessories and Hardware
 3. SD-04 Samples
 - a. Countertop
 - b. Backsplash
 - c. Manufacturer's Standard Color Charts
 4. SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions
 - a. Manufacturer's Instructions

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle countertops and backsplash in a manner that will prevent damage and disfigurement.
- B. Provide temporary skids under units weighing more than 300 pounds.

1.4 DESIGN

- B. Provide factory fabricated prefinished solid surface countertops as laid out on drawings for sizes and in the Manufacturer's Standard finishes of type, design, and configuration. Construct countertops as specified and meet the requirements of KCMA A161.1 (2000 Performance & Construction Standards for Kitchen and Vanity Cabinets).
- C. Accomplish fastenings to permit removal and replacement of individual units without affecting the remainder of the installation. Provide counters with watertight sink rim when indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

- A. Submit manufacturer's standard color charts for countertops showing the manufacturers recommended color and finish selections.
- B. Submit manufacturer's instructions for countertops including special provisions required to install equipment components and system packages. Include all special notices detailing impedances, hazards and safety precautions.
- C. Provide the manufacturer's standard type countertops or as indicated on the drawings. Accomplish fastenings to permit removal and replacement of individual countertops without affecting the remainder of the installation.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Provide fasteners conforming to the following:
 - 1. Screws: ASME B18.6.1, Group, Type and Class as applicable
 - 2. Anchoring Device: FS FF-S-325, Group, Type, and Class as applicable
 - 3. Toggle Bolts: FS FF-B-588, Type I, Class A, Style 2
 - 4. Nuts: ASTM F594, corrosion-resistant steel
 - 5. Bolts: ASTM A325, heavy, hexagon head bolts corrosion-resistant steel
 - 6. Nuts: ASTM F836M, corrosion-resistant steel
 - 7. Bolts: ASTM A325M, heavy hexagon head bolts corrosion-resistant steel
- B. Provide service fixtures as specified in the SOW conforming to the plumbing specification requirements (contractor to ensure compatibility):

2.3 COUNTERTOP AND BACKSPLASH FABRICATION

- A. Solid Surface Countertops
- B. Construct countertop and backsplash with integral sink and lavatory of sheet material for sink/lavatory cutout; as shown. Use material of 3/4 inch thickness minimum, cast, and filled nonporous solid surfacing composed of polyester resin crushed marble, glass frit, mineral fillers and pigments. Material is to comply with IAPMO Z124.3 and the following performance requirement; Flammability: Class I, flame spread of 25 maximum, smoke developed of 100 maximum when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

2.4 ACCESSORIES AND HARDWARE

- A. Mounting Adhesives
 - 1. Provide structural-grade silicone or epoxy adhesives of type recommended by manufacturer for application and conditions of use.
 - 2. Provide spacers, if required, of type recommended by adhesive manufacturer.
- B. Joint Sealants
 - 1. Use clear silicone sealant of type recommended by manufacturer for application and conditions of use.
 - 2. Provide anti-bacterial type.
- C. Solvent
 - 1. Use a product recommended by adhesive manufacturer to clean surface of quartz surfacing to assure adhesion of adhesives [and sealants].
- D. Cleaning Agents
 - 2. Use non-abrasive, soft-scrub type kitchen cleaners.

2.5 COLOR, TEXTURE, AND PATTERN

- A. Select color from manufacturer's standard colors.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Inspect material for defects prior to installation. Ensure materials throughout bear labels with the same batch number. Visually inspect materials used for adjacent pieces to assure acceptable color match. Inspect in lighting conditions similar to those on the project. Repair or replace damaged materials in a satisfactory manner.
- B. Install countertops plumb with cabinetry level to within 1/16 inch in 10 feet. Scribe and fit scribe strips to irregularities of adjacent surfaces. Gap openings exceeding 0.025 inch are not acceptable.
- C. Secure countertops to cabinetry and wall construction using 1/4-inch diameter masonry anchors spaced 30 inches maximum on center.
- D. Submit installation drawings for countertops. Ensure drawings include location of leg supports, details of supports and bracing related and dimensional positions, and locations for roughing in plumbing, including sinks, faucets, strainers and cocks.
- E. Preliminary Installation and Adjustment
 1. Install materials in accordance to manufacturer's recommendations. Lift and place to avoid breakage.
 2. Position materials to verify that materials are correctly sized and prepared. Make necessary adjustments.
 3. If jobsite cutting, grinding, or polishing is required, use water-cooled tools. Protect jobsite and surfaces against dust and water. Perform work away from installation site if possible.
 4. Gypsum drywall back walls which are not fire or acoustically rated may be routed up to half the thickness of the drywall to allow countertop to fit.
 5. Shim countertop drainage adjacent to sinks and where drainage is required, slightly to insure positive drainage.
- F. Permanent Installation
 6. After verifying fit, remove countertop and backsplash from position, clean substrates of dust and contamination, and clean countertop and backsplash back sides and joints with solvent.
 7. Apply enough mounting adhesive in accordance with adhesive manufacturer's recommendations to provide permanent, secure installation.
 8. Spacing of mounting adhesive will not exceed:
 9. Horizontal Surfaces: 3 inch on center
 10. Vertical Surfaces: 3 inch on center; provide temporary shims until adhesive cures.
 11. Install surfacing plumb, level, and square and flat to within 1/6 inch in 10 feet.
- G. Joints
 12. Ensure joints between adjacent pieces of countertop are: Flush, tight fitting, level, and neat. Securely join with adhesive. Fill joints level with countertop/backsplash surface.
 13. Clamp or brace countertop/backsplash in position until adhesive sets.
 14. Joints between backsplashes and countertops: Seal joints with silicone sealer.

3.2 CLEANING

- A. On completion of cabinet installation, touch up marred or abraded finished surfaces.
Remove crating and packing materials from premises. Wipe down surfaces to remove fingerprints and markings and leave in clean condition.

3.3 INSPECTION

- A. Examine casework grounds and supports for adequate anchorage, foreign material, moisture, and unevenness that could prevent quality casework installation.
- B. Ensure that electrical and plumbing rough-ins for casework are complete. Do not proceed with installation until defects are corrected.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 12 48 13
ENTRANCE FLOOR MATS AND FRAMES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM B221	(2021) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes
ASTM B221M	(2021) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes (Metric)
ASTM D2047	(2017) Standard Test Method for Static Coefficient of Friction of Polish-Coated Floor Surfaces as Measured by the James Machine
ASTM E648	(2019a) Standard Test Method for Critical Radiant Flux of Floor-Covering Systems Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

36 CFR 1191 Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines

1.2 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING

Materials in this technical specification may increase contract compliance with sustainability requirements.

1.2.1 EPA Comprehensive Procurement Guidelines

1.2.2 USDA Biobased

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Submit in accordance with the Statement of Work.

1.4 QUALITY CONTROL

Comply with 36 CFR 1191 Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines for installed entrance floor mats and frames. Ensure that entrance floor mats and frames are slip-resistant in accordance with ASTM D2047, with a minimum 0.60 coefficient of friction, for accessible routes and are structurally capable of withstanding a uniform floor load of 14 kPa 300 lb/sq ft wheel load. Ensure that flammability is in accordance with ASTM E648, Class 1, Critical Radiant Flux, minimum 0.45 watts/square meter.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver materials to the project site in their original packages or containers bearing labels clearly identifying the manufacturer, brand name, and quality or grade.

Store materials in their original unbroken packages or containers in the area in which they will be installed. Unwrap, inspect, and place mats at indicated locations. Remove all excess packing materials.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS

2.1.1 Entrance Floor Mats and Frames

Submit the manufacturer's catalog data. Submit samples of assembled sections of floor mats showing corners, intersections, and other details of construction. Submit samples of custom graphics, exposed floor mats, frame finishes and accessories.

2.1.1.2 4'x6' Recessed Floor Mat. Match existing depth to prevent trip hazard. Aluminum linkage with rubber tread strips. To be selected from Manufacturer's standard range. Construction Specialties or equal.

2.1.2 Adhesives and Concrete Primers.

Provide adhesives and concrete primers, where required, according to the manufacturer's recommendations.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

Comply with the manufacturer's requirements for substrates and floor conditions affecting installation of floor mats and frames. Ensure that all unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected before installation.

3.2 INSTALLATION

Submit detail drawings, and custom graphics drawings as required. Provide installation drawings. Provide the manufacturer's protection, maintenance, and repair information.

Install floor mats and frames according to manufacturer's instructions. Set mat tops at the height recommended by the manufacturer for the most effective cleaning action. Provide clearance between bottoms of doors and tops of mats. [Coordinate recess frame installation with concrete construction to ensure that frame anchorage is correct and that the base is level and flat. Install grout and fill around frames and, if required to set mat tops at proper elevations, in recesses under mats. Finish grout and fill smooth and level.]

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 00 00

PLUMBING, GENERAL
PURPOSE
11/15, CHG 4: 05/21

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AIR-CONDITIONING, HEATING AND REFRIGERATION INSTITUTE (AHRI)

AHRI 1010 (2002) Self-Contained, Mechanically Refrigerated Drinking-Water Coolers

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

ANSI Z21.10.1/CSA 4.1 (2019) Gas Water Heaters Vol. I, Storage Water Heaters with Input Ratings of 75,000 Btu Per Hour or Less

ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3 (2019) Gas-Fired Water Heaters Vol.III, Storage Water Heaters With Input Ratings Above 75,000 Btu Per Hour, Circulating and Instantaneous

ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4 (2015; R 2020) Relief Valves for Hot Water Supply Systems

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 90.1 - IP (2019; Errata 1 2019; Errata 2-5 2020; Addenda BY-CP 2020; Addenda AF-DB 2020; Addenda A-G 2020; Addenda F-Y 2021; Errata 6-8 2021; Interpretation 1-4 2020; Interpretation 5-8 2021 Addenda AS-AQ 2022) Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings

ASHRAE 90.1 - SI (2019; Errata 1-4 2020; Addenda BY-CP 2020; Addenda AF-DB 2020; Addenda A-G 2020; Addenda F-Y 2021; Errata 5-7 2021; Interpretation 1-4 2020; Interpretation 5-8 2021; Addenda AU-CM 2022) Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings

ASHRAE 146 (2020) Method of Testing and Rating Pool Heaters

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME A112.1.2	(2012; R 2017; R 2022) Air Gaps in Plumbing Systems (For Plumbing Fixtures and Water-Connected Receptors)
ASME A112.6.1M	(1997; R 2017) Floor Affixed Supports for Off-the-Floor Plumbing Fixtures for Public Use
ASME A112.6.3	(2019) Standard for Floor and Trench Drains
ASME A112.6.4	(2003; R 2012) Roof, Deck and Balcony Drains
ASME A112.14.1	(2003; R 2017; R 2022) Backwater Valves
ASME A112.19.1/CSA B45.2	(2013) Enameled Cast Iron and Enameled Steel Plumbing Fixtures
ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1	(2018; ERTA 2018) Standard for Vitreous China Plumbing Fixtures and Hydraulic Requirements for Water Closets and Urinals
ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4	(2017; Errata 2017) Stainless Steel Plumbing Fixtures
ASME A112.19.5	(2017) Flush Valves and Spuds for Water Closets, Urinals, and Tanks
ASME A112.19.17	(2010; R 2018) Manufactured Safety Vacuum Release Systems (SVRS) for Residential and Commercial Swimming Pool, Spa, Hot Tub, and Wading Pool Suction Systems
ASME A112.36.2M	(1991; R 2017) Cleanouts
ASME B1.20.1	(2013; R 2018) Pipe Threads, General Purpose (Inch)
ASME B16.3	(2021) Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings, Classes 150 and 300
ASME B16.4	(2021) Gray Iron Threaded Fittings; Classes 125 and 250
ASME B16.5	(2020) Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings NPS 1/2 Through NPS 24 Metric/Inch Standard
ASME B16.12	(2019) Cast Iron Threaded Drainage Fittings
ASME B16.15	(2018) Cast Copper Alloy Threaded Fittings Classes 125 and 250
ASME B16.18	(2021) Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings
ASME B16.21	(2021) Nonmetallic Flat Gaskets for Pipe Flanges

ASME B16.22	(2021) Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings
ASME B16.23	(2021) Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Drainage Fittings - DWV
ASME B16.24	(2022) Cast Copper Alloy Pipe Flanges, Flanged Fittings, and Valves Classes 150, 300, 600, 900, 1500, and 2500
ASME B16.29	(2017) Wrought Copper and Wrought Copper Alloy Solder-Joint Drainage Fittings - DWV
ASME B16.34	(2021) Valves - Flanged, Threaded and Welding End
ASME B16.39	(2020) Standard for Malleable Iron Threaded Pipe Unions; Classes 150, 250, and 300
ASME B16.50	(2021) Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Braze-Joint Pressure Fittings
ASME B16.51	(2013) Copper and Copper Alloy Press-Connect Pressure Fittings
ASME B31.1	(2020) Power Piping
ASME B31.5	(2020) Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components
ASME B40.100	(2013) Pressure Gauges and Gauge Attachments
ASME BPVC SEC IV	(2017) BPVC Section IV-Rules for Construction of Heating Boilers
ASME BPVC SEC IX	(2017; Errata 2018) BPVC Section IX-Welding, Brazing and Fusing Qualifications
ASME BPVC SEC VIII D1	(2019) BPVC Section VIII-Rules for Construction of Pressure Vessels Division 1
ASME CSD-1	(2021) Control and Safety Devices for Automatically Fired Boilers

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF SANITARY ENGINEERING (ASSE)

ASSE 1001	(2021) Performance Requirements for Atmospheric Type Vacuum Breakers
ASSE 1003	(2020) Performance Requirements for Water Pressure Reducing Valves for Domestic Water Distribution Systems - (ANSI approved 2010)

ASSE 1010	(2021) Performance Requirements for Water Hammer Arresters
ASSE 1011	(2017) Performance Requirements for Hose Connection Vacuum Breakers
ASSE 1012	(2021) Performance Requirements for Backflow Preventer with an Intermediate Atmospheric Vent
ASSE 1013	(2021) Performance Requirements for Reduced Pressure Principle Backflow Prevention Assemblies
ASSE 1018	(2001; R 2021) Performance Requirements for Trap Seal Primer Valves - Potable Water Supplied (ANSI Approved 2002)
ASSE 1019	(2011; R 2016) Performance Requirements for Wall Hydrant with Backflow Protection and Freeze Resistance
ASSE 1020	(2020) Performance Requirements for Pressure Vacuum Breaker Assemblies
ASSE 1037	(2015; R 2020) Performance Requirements for Pressurized Flushing Devices for Plumbing Fixtures

AMERICAN WATER WORKS ASSOCIATION (AWWA)

AWWA 10084	(2017) Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater
AWWA B300	(2018) Hypochlorites
AWWA B301	(2018) Liquid Chlorine
AWWA C203	(2020) Coal-Tar Protective Coatings and Linings for Steel Water Pipelines - Enamel and Tape - Hot-Applied
AWWA C606	(2015) Grooved and Shouldered Joints
AWWA C651	(2014) Standard for Disinfecting Water Mains
AWWA C652	(2019) Disinfection of Water-Storage Facilities
AWWA C700	(2020) Cold-Water Meters - Displacement Type, Metal Alloy Main Case
AWWA C701	(2019) Cold-Water Meters - Turbine Type for Customer Service
AWWA D100	(2021) Welded Steel Tanks for Water Storage

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS A5.8/A5.8M (2019) Specification for Filler Metals for Brazing and Braze Welding

AWS B2.2/B2.2M (2016) Specification for Brazing Procedure and Performance Qualification

ASSOCIATION OF POOL & SPA PROFESSIONALS (APSP)

ANSI/APSP-16 (2011) Standard Suction Fittings for Use in Swimming Pools, Wading Pools, Spas, and Hot Tubs

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A47/A47M (1999; R 2018; E 2018) Standard Specification for Ferritic Malleable Iron Castings

ASTM A53/A53M (2022) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless

ASTM A74 (2021) Standard Specification for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings

ASTM A105/A105M (2021) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Forgings for Piping Applications

ASTM A183 (2014; R 2020) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Track Bolts and Nuts

ASTM A193/A193M (2020) Standard Specification for Alloy-Steel and Stainless Steel Bolting Materials for High-Temperature Service and Other Special Purpose Applications

ASTM A515/A515M (2017) Standard Specification for Pressure Vessel Plates, Carbon Steel, for Intermediate- and Higher-Temperature Service

ASTM A516/A516M (2017) Standard Specification for Pressure Vessel Plates, Carbon Steel, for Moderate- and Lower-Temperature Service

ASTM A518/A518M (1999; R 2018) Standard Specification for Corrosion-Resistant High-Silicon Iron Castings

ASTM A536 (1984; R 2019; E 2019) Standard Specification for Ductile Iron Castings

ASTM A733 (2016) Standard Specification for Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel and Austenitic Stainless Steel Pipe Nipples

ASTM A888	(2021a) Standard Specification for Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste, and Vent Piping Applications
ASTM B32	(2020) Standard Specification for Solder Metal
ASTM B42	(2020) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes
ASTM B43	(2020) Standard Specification for Seamless Red Brass Pipe, Standard Sizes
ASTM B75/B75M	(2020) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube
ASTM B88	(2020) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube
ASTM B88M	(2020) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube (Metric)
ASTM B111/B111M	(2018) Standard Specification for Copper and Copper-Alloy Seamless Condenser Tubes and Ferrule Stock
ASTM B117	(2019) Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus
ASTM B152/B152M	(2019) Standard Specification for Copper Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Rolled Bar
ASTM B306	(2020) Standard Specification for Copper Drainage Tube (DWV)
ASTM B370	(2022) Standard Specification for Copper Sheet and Strip for Building Construction
ASTM B584	(2014; R 2022) Standard Specification for Copper Alloy Sand Castings for General Applications
ASTM B813	(2016) Standard Specification for Liquid and Paste Fluxes for Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube
ASTM B828	(2016) Standard Practice for Making Capillary Joints by Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube and Fittings
ASTM C564	(2020a) Standard Specification for Rubber Gaskets for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings
ASTM C920	(2018) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants

ASTM C1053	(2000; R 2010) Standard Specification for Borosilicate Glass Pipe and Fittings for Drain, Waste, and Vent (DWV) Applications
ASTM D638	(2014) Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Plastics
ASTM D1004	(2013) Initial Tear Resistance of Plastic Film and Sheeting
ASTM D1248	(2016) Standard Specification for Polyethylene Plastics Extrusion Materials for Wire and Cable
ASTM D1785	(2015; E 2018) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC), Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40, 80, and 120
ASTM D2000	(2018) Standard Classification System for Rubber Products in Automotive Applications
ASTM D2235	(2004; R 2016) Standard Specification for Solvent Cement for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe and Fittings
ASTM D2239	(2012) Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (SIDR-PR) Based on Controlled Inside Diameter
ASTM D2241	(2015) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pressure-Rated Pipe (SDR Series)
ASTM D2464	(2015) Standard Specification for Threaded Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80
ASTM D2466	(2017) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40
ASTM D2467	(2015) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80
ASTM D2564	(2020) Standard Specification for Solvent Cements for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Piping Systems
ASTM D2657	(2007; R 2015) Heat Fusion Joining Polyolefin Pipe and Fittings
ASTM D2661	(2014; E 2018) Standard Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Schedule 40, Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe and Fittings

ASTM D2665	(2014) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe and Fittings
ASTM D2672	(2014) Joints for IPS PVC Pipe Using Solvent Cement
ASTM D2683	(2020) Standard Specification for Socket-Type Polyethylene Fittings for Outside Diameter-Controlled Polyethylene Pipe and Tubing
ASTM D2737	(2012a) Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Tubing
ASTM D2822/D2822M	(2005; R 2011; E 2011) Standard Specification for Asphalt Roof Cement, Asbestos-Containing
ASTM D2846/D2846M	(2019) Standard Specification for Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Hot- and Cold-Water Distribution Systems
ASTM D2855	(2015) Standard Practice for Making Solvent-Cemented Joints with Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pipe and Fittings
ASTM D2996	(2017) Standard Specification for Filament-Wound "Fiberglass" (Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Thermosetting-Resin) Pipe
ASTM D3035	(2015) Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (DR-PR) Based on Controlled Outside Diameter
ASTM D3122	(1995; R 2009) Solvent Cements for Styrene-Rubber (SR) Plastic Pipe and Fittings
ASTM D3138	(2004; R 2016) Standard Specification for Solvent Cements for Transition Joints Between Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) and Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Non-Pressure Piping Components
ASTM D3139	(2019) Joints for Plastic Pressure Pipes Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals
ASTM D3212	(2020) Standard Specification for Joints for Drain and Sewer Plastic Pipes Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals
ASTM D3261	(2016) Standard Specification for Butt Heat Fusion Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Fittings for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe and Tubing

ASTM D3311	(2017) Standard Specification for Drain, Waste, and Vent (DWV) Plastic Fittings Patterns
ASTM D4101	(2017) Standard Classification System and Basis for Specification for Polypropylene Injection and Extrusion Materials
ASTM D4551	(2017) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Flexible Concealed Water-Containment Membrane
ASTM E1	(2014) Standard Specification for ASTM Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers
ASTM E96/E96M	(2022) Standard Test Methods for Gravimetric Determination of Water Vapor Transmission Rate of Materials
ASTM F409	(2017) Standard Specification for Thermoplastic Accessible and Replaceable Plastic Tube and Tubular Fittings
ASTM F437	(2021) Standard Specification for Threaded Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80
ASTM F438	(2017) Standard Specification for Socket-Type Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40
ASTM F439	(2019) Standard Specification for Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80
ASTM F441/F441M	(2020) Standard Specification for Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40 and 80
ASTM F442/F442M	(2020) Standard Specification for Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR)
ASTM F477	(2014; R 2021) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Seals (Gaskets) for Joining Plastic Pipe
ASTM F493	(2020) Standard Specification for Solvent Cements for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe and Fittings
ASTM F628	(2022) Standard Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Schedule 40 Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe with a Cellular Core

ASTM F877	(2022) Standard Specification for Crosslinked Polyethylene (PEX) Plastic Hot- and Cold-Water Distribution Systems
ASTM F891	(2016) Standard Specification for Coextruded Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe with a Cellular Core
ASTM F1290	(2019) Standard Practice for Electrofusion Joining Polyolefin Pipe and Fittings
ASTM F1760	(2016; R 2020) Standard Specification for Coextruded Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Non-Pressure Plastic Pipe Having Reprocessed-Recycled Content
ASTM F2387	(2021) Standard Specification for Manufactured Safety Vacuum Release Systems (SVRS) for Swimming Pools, Spas, and Hot Tubs
ASTM F2389	(2021) Standard Specification for Pressure-rated Polypropylene (PP) Piping Systems

CAST IRON SOIL PIPE INSTITUTE (CISPI)

CISPI 301	(2018) Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste, and Vent Piping Applications
CISPI 310	(2012) Coupling for Use in Connection with Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste, and Vent Piping Applications

COPPER DEVELOPMENT ASSOCIATION (CDA)

CDA A4015	(2016; 14/17) Copper Tube Handbook CSA
-----------	--

GROUP (CSA)

CSA B45.5-17/IAPMO Z124	(2017; Errata 2017; Errata 2018) Plastic Plumbing Fixtures
-------------------------	--

INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF PLUMBING AND MECHANICAL OFFICIALS (IAPMO)

IAPMO PS 117	(2005b) Press Type Or Plain End Rub Gasketed W/ Nail CU & CU Alloy Fittings 4 Install On CU Tubing
IAPMO UPC	(2003) Uniform Plumbing Code
IAPMO Z124.8	(1990) Plastic Bathtub Liners

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)

ICC A117.1 (2017) Standard And Commentary Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities

ICC IPC (2021) International Plumbing Code

INTERNATIONAL SAFETY EQUIPMENT ASSOCIATION (ISEA)

ANSI/ISEA Z358.1 (2014) American National Standard for Emergency Eyewash and Shower Equipment

MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS INDUSTRY (MSS)

MSS SP-25 (2018) Standard Marking System for Valves, Fittings, Flanges and Unions

MSS SP-44 (2019) Steel Pipeline Flanges

MSS SP-58 (2018) Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design and Manufacture, Selection, Application, and Installation

MSS SP-67 (2022) Butterfly Valves

MSS SP-70 (2011) Gray Iron Gate Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends

MSS SP-71 (2018) Gray Iron Swing Check Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends

MSS SP-72 (2010a) Ball Valves with Flanged or Butt-Welding Ends for General Service

MSS SP-78 (2011) Cast Iron Plug Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends

MSS SP-80 (2019) Bronze Gate, Globe, Angle and Check Valves

MSS SP-83 (2014) Class 3000 Steel Pipe Unions Socket Welding and Threaded

MSS SP-85 (2011) Gray Iron Globe & Angle Valves Flanged and Threaded Ends

MSS SP-110 (2010) Ball Valves Threaded, Socket-Welding, Solder Joint, Grooved and Flared Ends

NACE INTERNATIONAL (NACE)

NACE SP0169 (2013) Control of External Corrosion on Underground or Submerged Metallic Piping Systems

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA 250	(2020) Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum)
NEMA MG 1	(2021) Motors and Generators
NEMA MG 11	(1977; R 2012) Energy Management Guide for Selection and Use of Single Phase Motors

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 31	(2020) Standard for the Installation of Oil-Burning Equipment
NFPA 54	(2021) National Fuel Gas Code
NFPA 90A	(2021) Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems

NSF INTERNATIONAL (NSF)

NSF 372	(2016) Drinking Water System Components - Lead Content
NSF/ANSI 14	(2021) Plastics Piping System Components and Related Materials
NSF/ANSI 61	(2022) Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects

PLASTIC PIPE AND FITTINGS ASSOCIATION (PPFA)

PPFA Fire Man	(2016) Firestopping: Plastic Pipe in Fire Resistive Construction
---------------	--

PLUMBING AND DRAINAGE INSTITUTE (PDI)

PDI G 101	(2010) Testing and Rating Procedure for Hydro Mechanical Grease Interceptors with Appendix of Installation and Maintenance
PDI WH 201	(2010) Water Hammer Arresters Standard

SOCIETY OF AUTOMOTIVE ENGINEERS INTERNATIONAL (SAE)

SAE J1508	(2009) Hose Clamp Specifications
-----------	----------------------------------

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY (DOE)

Energy Star	(1992; R 2006) Energy Star Energy Efficiency Labeling System (FEMP)
-------------	---

U.S. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY (EPA)

EPA SM 9223	(2004) Enzyme Substrate Coliform Test
PL 93-523	(1974; A 1999) Safe Drinking Water Act

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVE AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)
S

- 10 CFR 430 Energy Conservation Program for Consumer Products
- 21 CFR 175 Indirect Food Additives: Adhesives and Components of Coatings
- 40 CFR 141.80 National Primary Drinking Water Regulations; Control of Lead and Copper; General Requirements

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

- UL 174 (2004; Reprint Dec 2021) UL Standard for Safety Household Electric Storage Tank Water Heaters
- UL 430 (2015; Reprint Sep 2021) UL Standard for Safety Waste Disposers
- UL 499 (2014; Reprint Jun 2022) UL Standard for Safety Electric Heating Appliances
- UL 732 (2018; Reprint Aug 2018) UL Standard for Safety Oil-Fired Storage Tank Water Heaters
- UL 1951 (2011; Reprint Jun 2020) UL Standard for Safety Electric Plumbing Accessories

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

[SD-10 Operation and Maintenance](#)

Plumbing System; G

Submit in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA.

1.3 STANDARD PRODUCTS

Specified materials and equipment shall be standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of such products. Specified equipment shall essentially duplicate equipment that has performed satisfactorily at least two years prior to bid opening. Standard products shall have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening. The 2-year use shall include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. The product shall have been for sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures during the 2 year period.

1.3.1 Alternative Qualifications

Products having less than a two-year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation for not less than 6000 hours, exclusive of the manufacturer's factory or laboratory tests, can be shown.

1.3.2 Service Support

The equipment items shall be supported by service organizations. Submit a certified list of qualified permanent service organizations for support of the equipment which includes their addresses and qualifications. These service organizations shall be reasonably convenient to the equipment installation and able to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

1.3.3 Manufacturer's Nameplate

Each item of equipment shall have a nameplate bearing the manufacturer's name, address, model number, and serial number securely affixed in a conspicuous place; the nameplate of the distributing agent will not be acceptable.

1.3.4 Modification of References

In each of the publications referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word, "shall" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these publications to the "authority having jurisdiction", or words of similar meaning, to mean the Contracting Officer.

1.3.4.1 Definitions

For the International Code Council (ICC) Codes referenced in the contract documents, advisory provisions shall be considered mandatory, the word "should" shall be interpreted as "shall." Reference to the "code official" shall be interpreted to mean the "Contracting Officer." For Navy owned property, references to the "owner" shall be interpreted to mean the "Contracting Officer." For leased facilities, references to the "owner" shall be interpreted to mean the "lessor." References to the "permit holder" shall be interpreted to mean the "Contractor."

1.3.4.2 Administrative Interpretations

For ICC Codes referenced in the contract documents, the provisions of Chapter 1, "Administrator," do not apply. These administrative requirements are covered by the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulations (FAR) included in this contract and by the authority granted to the Officer in Charge of Construction to administer the construction of this project. References in the ICC Codes to sections of Chapter 1, shall be applied appropriately by the Contracting Officer as authorized by his administrative cognizance and the FAR.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Handle, store, and protect equipment and materials to prevent damage before and during installation in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, and as approved by the Contracting Officer. Replace damaged or defective items.

1.5 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

Unless otherwise required herein, plumbing work shall be in accordance with ICC IPC.

1.6 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

The Contractor shall become familiar with details of the work, verify dimensions in the field, and advise

the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing any work.

1.7 INSTRUCTION TO GOVERNMENT PERSONNEL

When specified in other sections, furnish the services of competent instructors to give full instruction to the designated Government personnel in the adjustment, operation, and maintenance, including pertinent safety requirements, of the specified equipment or system. Instructors shall be thoroughly familiar with all parts of the installation and shall be trained in operating theory as well as practical operation and maintenance work.

Instruction shall be given during the first regular work week after the equipment or system has been accepted and turned over to the Government for regular operation. The number of man-days (8 hours per day) of instruction furnished shall be as specified in the individual section. When more than 4 man-days of instruction are specified, use approximately half of the time for classroom instruction. Use other time for instruction with the equipment or system.

When significant changes or modifications in the equipment or system are made under the terms of the contract, provide additional instruction to acquaint the operating personnel with the changes or modifications.

1.8 ACCESSIBILITY OF EQUIPMENT

Install all work so that parts requiring periodic inspection, operation, maintenance, and repair are readily accessible. Install concealed valves, expansion joints, controls, dampers, and equipment requiring access, in locations freely accessible through access doors.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

Materials for various services shall be in accordance with TABLES I and II. Pipe schedules shall be selected based on service requirements. Pipe fittings shall be compatible with the applicable pipe materials. Plastic pipe, fittings, and solvent cement shall meet NSF/ANSI 14 and shall be NSF listed for the service intended. Plastic pipe, fittings, and solvent cement used for potable hot and cold water service shall bear the NSF seal "NSF-PW." Polypropylene pipe and fittings shall conform to dimensional requirements of Schedule 40, Iron Pipe size and shall comply with NSF/ANSI 14, NSF/ANSI 61 and ASTM F2389. In line devices such as water meters, building valves, check valves, meter stops, valves, fittings and back flow preventers shall comply with PL 93-523 and NSF/ANSI 61, Section 8. End point devices such as drinking water fountains, lavatory faucets, kitchen and bar faucets, residential ice makers, supply stops and end point control valves used to dispense water for drinking must meet the requirements of NSF/ANSI 61, Section 9. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe shall not be installed underground, under concrete floor slabs, or in crawl spaces below kitchen floors. Plastic pipe shall not be installed in air plenums. Plastic pipe shall not be installed in a pressure piping system in buildings greater than three stories including any basement levels.

2.1.1 Pipe Joint Materials

Solder containing lead shall not be used with copper pipe. Cast iron soil pipe and fittings shall be marked with the collective trademark of the Cast Iron Soil Institute. Joints and gasket materials shall conform to the following:

- a. Coupling for Cast-Iron Pipe: for hub and spigot type ASTM A74, AWWA C606. For hubless type: CISPI 310
- e. Brazing Material: Brazing material shall conform to AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP-5.
- f. Brazing Flux: Flux shall be in paste or liquid form appropriate for use with brazing material. Flux shall be as follows: lead-free; have a 100 percent flushable residue; contain slightly acidic reagents; contain potassium borides; and contain fluorides.

- g. Solder Material: Solder metal shall conform to ASTM B32.
- h. Solder Flux: Flux shall be liquid form, non-corrosive, and conform to ASTM B813, Standard Test 1.
- i. PTFE Tape: PTFE Tape, for use with Threaded Metal or Plastic Pipe.
- j. Rubber Gaskets for Cast-Iron Soil-Pipe and Fittings (hub and spigot type and hubless type): ASTM C564.
- k. Rubber Gaskets for Grooved Pipe: ASTM D2000, maximum temperature 230 degrees F.
- l. Flexible Elastomeric Seals: ASTM D3139, ASTM D3212 or ASTM F477.
- m. Bolts and Nuts for Grooved Pipe Couplings: Heat-treated carbon steel, ASTM A183.
- n. Solvent Cement for Transition Joints between ABS and PVC Nonpressure Piping Components: ASTM D3138.
- o. Plastic Solvent Cement for ABS Plastic Pipe: ASTM D2235.
- p. Plastic Solvent Cement for PVC Plastic Pipe: ASTM D2564 and ASTM D2855.
- q. Plastic Solvent Cement for CPVC Plastic Pipe: ASTM F493.
- r. Flanged fittings including, but not limited to, flanges, bolts, nuts and bolt patterns shall be in accordance with ASME B16.5 class 150 and shall have the manufacturer's trademark affixed in accordance with MSS SP-25. Flange material shall conform to ASTM A105/A105M. Blind flange material shall conform to ASTM A516/A516M cold service and ASTM A515/A515M for hot service. Bolts shall be high strength or intermediate strength with material conforming to ASTM A193/A193M.
- s. Plastic Solvent Cement for Styrene Rubber Plastic Pipe: ASTM D3122.
- t. Press fittings for Copper Pipe and Tube: Copper press fittings shall conform to the material and sizing requirements of ASME B16.51 and performance criteria of IAPMO PS 117. Sealing elements for copper press fittings shall be EPDM, FKM or HNBR. Sealing elements shall be factory installed or an alternative supplied fitting manufacturer. Sealing element shall be selected based on manufacturer's approved application guidelines.
- u. Copper tubing shall conform to ASTM B88, Type K, L or M.
- v. Heat-fusion joints for polypropylene piping: ASTM F2389.

2.1.1.2 Miscellaneous Materials

2.1.1.3 Pipe Insulation Material conform to the following:

Insulation shall be as specified in Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

2.2 PIPE HANGERS, INSERTS, AND SUPPORTS

Pipe hangers, inserts, and supports shall conform to MSS SP-58.

2.3 VALVES

Valves shall be provided on supplies to equipment and fixtures. Valves 2-1/2 inches and smaller shall be bronze with threaded bodies for pipe and solder-type connections for tubing. Valves 3 inches and larger shall have flanged iron bodies and bronze trim. Pressure ratings shall be based upon the application. Grooved end valves may be provided if the manufacturer certifies that the valves meet the performance requirements of applicable MSS standard. Valves shall conform to the following standards:

Description	Standard
Ball Valves Threaded, Socket-Welding, Solder Joint, Grooved and Flared Ends	MSS SP-110

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS PIPING ITEMS

2.5.1 Escutcheon Plates

Provide one piece or split hinge metal plates for piping entering floors, walls, and ceilings in exposed spaces. Provide chromium-plated on copper alloy plates or polished stainless steel finish in finished spaces.

Provide paint finish on plates in unfinished spaces.

2.5.2 Pipe Sleeves

Provide where piping passes entirely through walls, ceilings, roofs, and floors. Sleeves are not required where [supply] drain, waste, and vent (DWV) piping passes through concrete floor slabs located on grade, except where penetrating a membrane waterproof floor.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Piping located in air plenums shall conform to NFPA 90A requirements. Piping located in shafts that constitute air ducts or that enclose air ducts shall be noncombustible in accordance with NFPA 90A. Installation of plastic pipe where in compliance with NFPA may be installed in accordance with PPFA Fire Man. The plumbing system shall be installed complete with necessary fixtures, fittings, traps, valves, and accessories. Water and drainage piping shall be extended 5 feet outside the building, unless otherwise indicated.

3.1.1 Water Pipe, Fittings, and Connections

3.1.2 Joints

Installation of pipe and fittings shall be made in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Mitering of joints for elbows and notching of straight runs of pipe for tees will not be permitted. Joints shall be made up with fittings of compatible material and made for the specific purpose intended.

3.1.2.1 Threaded

Threaded joints shall have American Standard taper pipe threads conforming to ASME B1.20.1. Only male pipe threads shall be coated with graphite or with an approved graphite compound, or with an inert filler and oil, or shall have a polytetrafluoroethylene tape applied.

3.1.2.2 Mechanical Couplings

Mechanical couplings may be used in conjunction with grooved pipe for aboveground, ferrous or non-ferrous, domestic hot and cold water systems, in lieu of unions, brazed, soldered, welded, flanged, or

threaded joints. Mechanical couplings are permitted in accessible locations including behind access plates. Flexible grooved joints will not be permitted, except as vibration isolators adjacent to mechanical equipment. Rigid grooved joints shall incorporate an angle bolt pad design which maintains metal-to-metal contact with equal amount of pad offset of housings upon installation to ensure positive rigid clamping of the pipe.

Designs which can only clamp on the bottom of the groove or which utilize gripping teeth or jaws, or which use misaligned housing bolt holes, or which require a torque wrench or torque specifications will not be permitted.

Grooved fittings and couplings, and grooving tools shall be provided from the same manufacturer. Segmentally welded elbows shall not be used. Grooves shall be prepared in accordance with the coupling manufacturer's latest published standards. Grooving shall be performed by qualified grooving operators having demonstrated proper grooving procedures in accordance with the tool manufacturer's recommendations.

The Contracting Officer shall be notified 24 hours in advance of test to demonstrate operator's capability, and the test shall be performed at the work site, if practical, or at a site agreed upon. The operator shall demonstrate the ability to properly adjust the grooving tool, groove the pipe, and to verify the groove dimensions in accordance with the coupling manufacturer's specifications.

3.1.2.3 Unions and Flanges

Unions, flanges and mechanical couplings shall not be concealed in walls, ceilings, or partitions. Unions shall be used on pipe sizes 2-1/2 inches and smaller; flanges shall be used on pipe sizes 3 inches and larger.

3.1.2.4 Cast Iron Soil, Waste and Vent Pipe

Bell and spigot compression and hubless gasketed clamp joints for soil, waste and vent piping shall be installed per the manufacturer's recommendations.

3.1.2.5 Plastic Pipe

Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) pipe shall have joints made with solvent cement. PVC and CPVC pipe shall have joints made with solvent cement elastomeric, threading, (threading of Schedule 80 Pipe is allowed only where required for disconnection and inspection; threading of Schedule 40 Pipe is not allowed), or mated flanged.

3.1.3 Dissimilar Pipe Materials

Connections between ferrous and non-ferrous copper water pipe shall be made with dielectric unions or flange waterways. Dielectric waterways shall have temperature and pressure rating equal to or greater than that specified for the connecting piping. Waterways shall have metal connections on both ends suited to match connecting piping. Dielectric waterways shall be internally lined with an insulator specifically designed to prevent current flow between dissimilar metals. Dielectric flanges shall meet the performance requirements described herein for dielectric waterways. Connecting joints between plastic and metallic pipe shall be made with transition fitting for the specific purpose.

3.2 FIXTURES AND FIXTURE TRIMMINGS

3.3 ESCUTCHEONS

Escutcheons shall be provided at finished surfaces where bare or insulated piping, exposed to view, passes through floors, walls, or ceilings, except in boiler, utility, or equipment rooms. Escutcheons shall be fastened securely to pipe or pipe covering and shall be satin-finish, corrosion-resisting steel, polished chromium-plated zinc alloy, or polished chromium-plated copper alloy. Escutcheons shall be either one-piece or split-pattern, held in place by internal spring tension or setscrew.

3.4.1 Operational TestD DISINFECTION

Upon completion of flushing the Contractor shall subject the plumbing system to operating tests to demonstrate satisfactory installation, connections, adjustments, and functional and operational efficiency. Such operating tests shall cover a period of not less than 8 hours for each system and shall include the following information in a report

3.5 TABLES as to the adequacy of the system:

TABLE I

PIPE AND FITTING MATERIALS FOR DRAINAGE, WASTE, VENT AND CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING SYSTEMS								
Item #	Pipe and Fitting Materials	SERVICE A	SERVICE B	SERVICE C	SERVICE D	SERVICE E	SERVICE F	SERVICE G
1	Cast iron soil pipe and fittings, hub and spigot, ASTM A74 with compression gaskets. Pipe and fittings shall be marked with the CISPI trademark.	X	X	X	X	X		
8	Wrought copper grooved joint pressure fittings for non-ferrous pipe ASTM B75/B75M C12200, ASTM B152/B152M, C11000, ASME B16.22 ASME B16.22 for use with Item 5	X	X					
13	Cast copper alloy solder joint pressure fittings, ASME B16.18 for use with Item 14				X	X		X
14	Seamless copper pipe, ASTM B42						X	X
15	Cast bronze threaded fittings, ASME B16.15				X	X		
16	Copper drainage tube, (DWV), ASTM B306	X*	X	X*	X	X		X
17	Wrought copper and wrought alloy solder-joint drainage fittings. ASME B16.29	X	X	X	X	X		X

TABLE I								
PIPE AND FITTING MATERIALS FOR DRAINAGE, WASTE, VENT AND CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING SYSTEMS								
I #	Pipe and Fitting Materials	SERVIC A	SERVIC B	SERVIC C	SERVIC D	SERVIC E	SERVIC F	SERVICE G
1	Cast copper alloy solder joint drainage fittings, DWV, ASME B16.23	X	X	X	X	X		X
2	Polyvinyl Chloride plastic drain, waste and vent pipe and fittings, ASTM D2665, ASTM F891, (Sch 40) ASTM F1760	X	X	X	X	X	X	X

SERVICE:

A - Underground Building Soil, Waste and Storm Drain B - Aboveground Soil, Waste, Drain In Buildings
 C - Underground Vent D - Aboveground Vent
 E - Interior Rainwater Conductors Aboveground
 F - Corrosive Waste And Vent Above And Belowground G - Condensate Drain Aboveground

* - Hard Temper

TABLE II					
PIPE AND FITTING MATERIALS FOR PRESSURE PIPING SYSTEMS					
Item #	Pipe and Fitting Materials	SERVICE A	SERVICE B	SERVICE C	SERVICE D
1	Malleable-iron threaded fittings:				
	a. Galvanized, ASME B16.3 for use with Item 4a	X	X	X	X
	b. Same as "a" but not galvanized for use with Item 4b			X	
7	Seamless copper pipe, ASTM B42	X	X		X
8	Seamless copper water tube, ASTM B88, ASTM B88M	X**	X**	X**	X***

TABLE II					
PIPE AND FITTING MATERIALS FOR PRESSURE PIPING SYSTEMS					
Item #	Pipe and Fitting Materials	SERVICE A	SERVICE B	SERVICE C	SERVICE D
9	Cast bronze threaded fittings, ASME B16.15 for use with Items 5 and 7	X	X		X
25	Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe, Schedules 40, 80, and 120, ASTM D1785	X			X
26	Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) pressure-rated pipe (SDR Series), ASTM D2241	X			X
27	Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe fittings, Schedule 40, ASTM D2466	X			X
29	Threaded polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe fittings, schedule 80, ASTM D2464	X			X
30	Joints for IPS PVC pipe using solvent cement, ASTM D2672	X			X
31	Polypropylene (PP) plastic pipe and fittings; ASTM F2389	X	X		X
38	Press Fittings	X	X		
<p>SERVICE: A - Cold Water Service Aboveground B - Hot and Cold Water Distribution 180 degrees F Maximum Aboveground C - Compressed Air Lubricated D - Cold Water Service Belowground Indicated types are minimum wall thicknesses. ** - Type L - Hard *** - Type K - Hard temper with brazed joints only or type K-soft temper without joints in or under floors **** - In or under slab floors only brazed joints</p>					

-- End of Section --

SECTION 224000
PLUMBING FIXTURES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Lavatory faucet and drain
- B. Shower head and

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. IAPMO Z124 - Plastic Plumbing Fixtures 2017, with Errata.
- B. ASHRAE Std 18 - Methods of Testing for Rating Drinking-Water Coolers with Self-Contained Mechanical Refrigeration 2008 (Reaffirmed 2013).
- C. ASME A112.6.1M - Floor-Affixed Supports for Off-the-Floor Plumbing Fixtures for Public Use 1997 (Reaffirmed 2017).
- D. ASME A112.18.1 - Plumbing Supply Fittings 2018, with Errata.
- E. ASME A112.19.2 - Ceramic Plumbing Fixtures 2018, with Errata.
- F. ASME A112.19.4M - Porcelain Enameled Formed Steel Plumbing Fixtures 1994 (Reaffirmed 2009).
- G. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials 2021a.
- H. ISFA 2-01 - Classification and Standards for Solid Surfacing Material 2013.
- I. NEMA LD 3 - High-Pressure Decorative Laminates 2005.
- J. NSF 61 - Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects 2021.
- K. NSF 372 - Drinking Water System Components - Lead Content 2022.
- L. UL (DIR) - Online Certifications Directory Current Edition.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittal Requirements as listed in the Statement of Work (SOW).
- B. Product Data: Provide catalog illustrations of fixtures, sizes, rough-in dimensions, utility sizes, trim, and finishes.
- C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate installation methods and procedures.
- D. Maintenance Data: Include fixture trim exploded view and replacement parts lists.
- E. Warranty: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the type of products specified in this section, with minimum three years of experience.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Accept fixtures on site in factory packaging. Inspect for damage.
- B. Protect installed fixtures from damage by securing areas and by leaving factory packaging in place to protect fixtures and prevent use.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Potable Water Systems: Provide plumbing fittings and faucets that comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 for maximum lead content; label pipe and fittings.

2.02 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with applicable codes for installation of plumbing systems.
- B. Comply with UL (DIR) requirements.
- C. Perform work in accordance with local health department regulations.

2.03 LAVATORIES

- A. Supply Faucet Manufacturers:
 - 1. Delta
 - 2. American Standard, Inc: www.americanstandard-us.com/#sle.
 - 3. Toto.
 - 4. Or equal
- B. Provide Delta Arvo Chrome 2-handle 4-in centerset WaterSense High-arc Bathroom Sink Faucet with Drain, or equal. Include matching pop-up drain.

2.04 SHOWER HEAD

- A. Sink Manufacturers:
 - 1. Elkay.
 - 2. Advance Tabco
 - 3. Or equal
- B. Provide Delta Monitor 132900 Series Shower Head and single lever mixing valve, or equal.

2.05 SERVICE SINKS

- A. Service Sink Manufacturers:
 - 1. Florestone.
 - 2. Acorn
 - 3. Or equal
- B. Bowl: 32 by 32 by 6 inch (600 by 600 by 250 mm) high, floor mounted, with one inch (25 mm) wide shoulders, stainless steel strainer.
- C. Trim: ASME A112.18.1 exposed wall type supply with lever handles, spout wall brace, vacuum breaker, hose end spout, strainers, eccentric adjustable inlets, integral screwdriver stops with covering caps and adjustable threaded wall flanges.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that walls and floor finishes are prepared and ready for installation of fixtures.
- B. Verify that electric power is available and of the correct characteristics.
- C. Confirm that millwork is constructed with adequate provision for the installation of counter top lavatories and sinks.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Rough-in fixture piping connections in accordance with minimum sizes indicated in fixture rough-in schedule for particular fixtures.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install each fixture with trap, easily removable for servicing and cleaning.
- B. Provide chrome plated rigid or flexible supplies to fixtures with loose key stops, reducers, and escutcheons.
- C. Install components level and plumb.
- D. Install and secure fixtures in place with wall supports and bolts.

- E. Solidly attach water closets to floor with lag screws. Lead flashing is not intended hold fixture in place.

3.04 INTERFACE WITH WORK OF OTHER SECTIONS

- A. Review millwork shop drawings. Confirm location and size of fixtures and openings before rough-in and installation.

3.05 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust stops or valves for intended water flow rate to fixtures without splashing, noise, or overflow.

3.06 CLEANING

- A. Clean plumbing fixtures and equipment.

3.07 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products from damage due to subsequent construction operations.
- B. Do not permit use of fixtures by construction personnel.
- C. Repair or replace damaged products before Date of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 03 00.00 20

BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND
METHODS
08/10, CHG 3: 08/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM B117 (2019) Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray
(Fog) Apparatus

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE) IEEE

C2 (2017; Errata 1-2 2017; INT 1 2017)
National Electrical Safety Code NATIONAL

ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA MG 1 (2018) Motors and Generators

NEMA MG 11 (1977; R 2012) Energy Management Guide for Selection
and Use of Single Phase Motors

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2 2020; TIA
20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA 20-3; TIA 20-4)
National Electrical Code

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

This section applies to all sections of Divisions: 21, FIRE SUPPRESSION; 22, PLUMBING; and 23, HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR CONDITIONING of this project specification, unless specified otherwise in the individual section.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.3.1 Material and Equipment Qualifications

Provide materials and equipment that are standard products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the manufacture of such products, which are of a similar material, design and workmanship. Standard products must have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening. The 2-year use must include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. The product must have been for sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures during the 2 year period.

1.3.2 Alternative Qualifications

Products having less than a two-year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation for not less than 6000 hours, exclusive of the manufacturer's factory or laboratory tests, can be shown.

1.3.3 Service Support

The equipment items must be supported by service organizations. Submit a certified list of qualified permanent service organizations for support of the equipment which includes their addresses and qualifications. These service organizations must be reasonably convenient to the equipment installation and able to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

1.3.4 Manufacturer's Nameplate

For each item of equipment, provide a nameplate bearing the manufacturer's name, address, model number, and serial number securely affixed in a conspicuous place; the nameplate of the distributing agent will not be acceptable.

1.3.5 Modification of References

In each of the publications referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word, "must" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these publications to the "authority having jurisdiction", or words of similar meaning, to mean the Contracting Officer.

1.3.5.1 Definitions

For the International Code Council (ICC) Codes referenced in the contract documents, advisory provisions must be considered mandatory, the word "should" is interpreted as "must." Reference to the "code official" must be interpreted to mean the "Contracting Officer." For Navy owned property, references to the "owner" must be interpreted to mean the "Contracting Officer." For leased facilities, references to the "owner" must be interpreted to mean the "lessor." References to the "permit holder" must be interpreted to mean the "Contractor."

1.3.5.2 Administrative Interpretations

For ICC Codes referenced in the contract documents, the provisions of Chapter 1, "Administrator," do not apply. These administrative requirements are covered by the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulations (FAR) included in this contract and by the authority granted to the Officer in Charge of Construction to administer the construction of this project. References in the ICC Codes to sections of Chapter 1, must be applied appropriately by the Contracting Officer as authorized by his administrative cognizance and the FAR.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Handle, store, and protect equipment and materials to prevent damage before and during installation in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, and as approved by the Contracting Officer. Replace damaged or defective items.

1.5 ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Electrical installations must conform to [IEEE C2](#), [NFPA 70](#), and requirements specified herein.

1.5.1 New Work

Provide electrical components of mechanical equipment, such as motors, motor starters (except

starters/controllers which are indicated as part of a motor control center)], control or push-button stations, float or pressure switches, solenoid valves, integral disconnects, and other devices functioning to control mechanical equipment, as well as control wiring and conduit for circuits rated 100 volts or less, to conform with the requirements of the section covering the mechanical equipment. Extended voltage range motors are not to be permitted. The interconnecting power wiring and conduit, control wiring rated 120 volts (nominal) and conduit, and the electrical power circuits must be provided under Division 26, except internal wiring for components of package equipment must be provided as an integral part of the equipment. When motors and equipment furnished are larger than sizes indicated, provide any required changes to the electrical service as may be necessary and related work as a part of the work for the section specifying that motor or equipment.

1.5.2 High Efficiency Motors

1.5.2.1 High Efficiency Single-Phase Motors

Unless otherwise specified, single-phase fractional-horsepower alternating-current motors must be high efficiency types corresponding to the applications listed in NEMA MG 11.

1.5.2.2 High Efficiency Polyphase Motors

Unless otherwise specified, polyphase motors must be selected based on high efficiency characteristics relative to the applications as listed in NEMA MG 10. Additionally, polyphase squirrel-cage medium induction motors with continuous ratings must meet or exceed energy efficient ratings in accordance with Table 12-6C of NEMA MG 1.

1.5.3 Three-Phase Motor Protection

Provide controllers for motors rated one **1 horsepower** and larger with electronic phase-voltage monitors designed to protect motors from phase-loss, undervoltage, and overvoltage. Provide protection for motors from immediate restart by a time adjustable restart relay.

1.6 INSTRUCTION TO GOVERNMENT

When specified in other sections, furnish the services of competent instructors to give full instruction to the designated Government personnel in the adjustment, operation, and maintenance, including pertinent safety requirements, of the specified equipment or system. Instructors must be thoroughly familiar with all parts of the installation and must be trained in operating theory as well as practical operation and maintenance work.

Instruction must be given during the first regular work week after the equipment or system has been accepted and turned over to the Government for regular operation. The number of man-days (8 hours per day) of instruction furnished must be as specified in the individual section. When more than 4 man-days of instruction are specified, use approximately half of the time for classroom instruction. Use other time for instruction with the equipment or system.

When significant changes or modifications in the equipment or system are made under the terms of the contract, provide additional instruction to acquaint the operating personnel with the changes or modifications.

1.7 ACCESSIBILITY

Install all work so that parts requiring periodic inspection, operation, maintenance, and repair are readily accessible. Install concealed valves, expansion joints, controls, dampers, and equipment requiring access, in locations freely accessible through access doors.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PAINTING OF NEW EQUIPMENT

New equipment painting must be factory applied or shop applied, and must be as specified herein, and provided under each individual section.

3.1.1 Factory Painting Systems

Manufacturer's standard factory painting systems may be provided subject to certification that the factory painting system applied will withstand 125 hours in a salt-spray fog test, except that equipment located outdoors must withstand 500 hours in a salt-spray fog test. Salt-spray fog test must be in accordance with ASTM B117, and for that test the acceptance criteria must be as follows: immediately after completion of the test, the paint must show no signs of blistering, wrinkling, or cracking, and no loss of adhesion; and the specimen must show no signs of rust creepage beyond 0.125 inch on either side of the scratch mark.

The film thickness of the factory painting system applied on the equipment must not be less than the film thickness used on the test specimen. If manufacturer's standard factory painting system is being proposed for use on surfaces subject to temperatures above 120 degrees F, the factory painting system must be designed for the temperature service.

3.1.2 Shop Painting Systems for Metal Surfaces

Clean, pretreat, prime and paint metal surfaces; except aluminum surfaces need not be painted. Apply coatings to clean dry surfaces. Clean the surfaces to remove dust, dirt, rust, oil and grease by wire brushing and solvent degreasing prior to application of paint, except metal surfaces subject to temperatures in excess of 120 degrees F must be cleaned to bare metal.

Where more than one coat of paint is specified, apply the second coat after the preceding coat is thoroughly dry. Lightly sand damaged painting and retouch before applying the succeeding coat. Color of finish coat must be aluminum or light gray.

- a. Temperatures Less Than 120 Degrees F: Immediately after cleaning, the metal surfaces subject to temperatures less than 120 degrees F must receive one coat of pretreatment primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of 0.3 mil, one coat of primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of 1 mil; and two coats of enamel applied to a minimum dry film thickness of 1 mil per coat.
- b. Temperatures Between 120 and 400 Degrees F: Metal surfaces subject to temperatures between 120 and 400 degrees F must receive two coats of 400 degrees F heat-resisting enamel applied to a total minimum thickness of 2 mils.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 05 93

TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC
11/15

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ACOUSTICAL SOCIETY OF AMERICA (ASA)

ASA S1.4 (1983; Amendment 1985; R 2006)
Specification for Sound Level Meters (ASA 47)

ASA S1.11 PART 1 (2014) American National Standard Electroacoustics
– Octave-Band and Fractional-Octave-Band Filters –
Part 1: Specifications

AIR MOVEMENT AND CONTROL ASSOCIATION INTERNATIONAL, INC. (AMCA)

AMCA 203 (1990; R 2011) Field Performance
Measurements of Fan Systems

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING
ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 62.1 (2010) Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality

ASHRAE HVAC APP IP HDBK (2016) HVAC Applications Handbook, I-P Edition

ASHRAE HVAC APP SI HDBK (2016) HVAC Applications Handbook, SI
Edition ASSOCIATED

AIR BALANCE COUNCIL (AABC)

AABC MN-1 (2002; 6th ed) National Standards for Total
System Balance

AABC MN-4 (1996) Test and Balance Procedures

NATIONAL AERONAUTICS AND SPACE ADMINISTRATION (NASA)

RCBEA GUIDE (2004) NASA Reliability Centered Building and
Equipment Acceptance Guide

NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL BALANCING BUREAU (NEBB)

NEBB MASV (2006) Procedural Standards for

Measurements and Assessment of Sound and Vibration

NEBB PROCEDURAL STANDARDS (2015) Procedural Standards for TAB
(Testing, Adjusting and Balancing) Environmental Systems

SHEET METAL AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS' NATIONAL ASSOCIATION
(SMACNA)

SMACNA 1780 (2002) HVAC Systems - Testing, Adjusting and
Balancing, 3rd Edition

SMACNA 1858 (2004) HVAC Sound And Vibration Manual - First
Edition

SMACNA 1972 CD (2012) HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual - 2nd Edition

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

40 CFR 82 Protection of Stratospheric Ozone

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- a. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council
- b. HVAC: Heating, ventilating, and air conditioning; or heating, ventilating, and cooling
- c. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau
- d. Out-of-tolerance data: Pertains only to field acceptance testing of TAB report. When applied to TAB work this phase means "a measurement taken during TAB field acceptance testing which does not fall within the range of plus 5 to minus 5 percent of the original measurement
- e. Season of maximum cooling load: The time of year when the outdoor temperature at the project site remains within plus or minus 5 degrees Fahrenheit of the project site's summer outdoor design temperature,
- f. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing (of HVAC systems)
- g. TAB'd: HVAC Testing/Adjusting/Balancing procedures performed
- h. TAB Agency: TAB Firm
- i. TAB team field leader: TAB team field leader
- j. TAB team supervisor: TAB team engineer
- k. TAB team technicians: TAB team assistants
- l. TABB: Testing Adjusting and Balancing Bureau

1.2.1 Similar Terms

In some instances, terminology differs between the Contract and the TAB Standard primarily because the intent of this Section is to use the industry standards specified, along with additional requirements listed herein to produce optimal results.

The following table of similar terms is provided for clarification only. Contract requirements take

precedent over the corresponding AABC, NEBB, or TABB requirements where differences exist.

SIMILAR TERMS			
Contract Term	AABC Term	NEBB Term	TABB Term
TAB Standard	National Standards for Testing and Balancing Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning Systems	Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting and Balancing of Environmental Systems	International Standards for Environmental Systems Balance
TAB Specialist	TAB Engineer	TAB Supervisor	TAB Supervisor
Systems Readiness Check	Construction Phase Inspection	Field Readiness Check & Preliminary Field Procedures	Field Readiness Check & Prelim. Field Procedures

1.3 WORK DESCRIPTION

The work includes testing, adjusting, and balancing (TAB) of new and existing heating, ventilating, and cooling (HVAC) air distribution systems including equipment and performance data, ducts, and piping which are located within, on, under, between, and adjacent to buildings including records of existing conditions.

Perform TAB in accordance with the requirements of the TAB procedural standard recommended by the TAB trade association that approved the TAB Firm's qualifications. Comply with requirements of AABC MN-1, NEBB PROCEDURAL STANDARDS, or SMACNA 1780 (TABB) as supplemented and modified by this specification section. All recommendations and suggested practices contained in the TAB procedural standards are considered mandatory.

Conduct TAB of the indicated existing systems and equipment and submit the specified DALT and TAB reports for approval. Conduct TAB work in accordance with the requirements of this section.

1.3.1 Air Distribution Systems

Test, adjust, and balance systems (TAB) in compliance with this section. Obtain Contracting Officer's written approval before applying insulation to exterior of air distribution systems as specified under Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

1.3.2 Water Distribution Systems

TAB systems in compliance with this section. Obtain Contracting Officer's written approval before applying insulation to water distribution systems as specified under Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS. At Contractor's option and with Contracting Officer's written approval, the piping systems may be insulated before systems are TAB'd.

Terminate piping insulation immediately adjacent to each flow control valve, automatic control valve, or device. Seal the ends of pipe insulation and the space between ends of pipe insulation and piping, with waterproof vapor barrier coating.

After completion of work under this section, insulate the flow control valves and devices as

specified under Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

1.3.3 TAB SCHEMATIC DRAWINGS

Show the following information on TAB Schematic Drawings:

1. A unique number or mark for each piece of equipment or terminal.
2. Air quantities at air terminals.
3. Air quantities and temperatures in air handling unit schedules.
4. Water quantities and temperatures in thermal energy transfer equipment schedules.
5. Water quantities and heads in pump schedules.

The Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing (TAB) Specialist must review the Contract Plans and Specifications and advise the Contracting Officer of any deficiencies that would prevent the effective and accurate TAB of the system, including records of existing conditions, and systems readiness check. The TAB Specialist must provide a Design Review Report individually listing each deficiency and the corresponding proposed corrective action necessary for proper system operation.

Submit three copies of the TAB Schematic Drawings and Report Forms to the Contracting Officer, no later than 21 days prior to the start of TAB field measurements.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submit the following in accordance with Statement of Work.

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals Records of

Existing Conditions; G

Independent TAB Agency and Personnel Qualifications; G TAB Design

Review Report; G

SD-02 Shop Drawings

TAB Schematic Drawings and Report Forms; G SD-03

Product Data

Equipment and Performance Data; G TAB

Related HVAC Submittals; G

A list of the TAB Related HVAC Submittals, no later than 7 days
after the approval of the TAB team engineer [and assistant].

SD-06 Test Reports

Certified Baseline TAB for All Replaced Equipment; G

Certified Final TAB Report: G

SD-07 Certificates

Independent TAB Agency and Personnel Qualifications; G

TAB Pre-Field Engineering Report; G Instrument

Calibration Certificates; G TAB Procedures Summary; G

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.5.1 Independent TAB Agency and Personnel Qualifications

To secure approval for the proposed agency, submit information certifying that the TAB agency is a first tier subcontractor who is not affiliated with any other company participating in work on this contract, including design, furnishing equipment, or construction. Further, submit the following, for the agency, to Contracting Officer for approval:

a. Independent AABC or NEBB or TABB TAB agency:

TAB agency: AABC registration number and expiration date of current certification; or NEBB certification number and expiration date of current certification; or TABB certification number and expiration date of current certification.

TAB team supervisor: Name and copy of AABC or NEBB or TABB TAB supervisor certificate and expiration date of current certification.

TAB team field leader: Name and documented evidence that the team field leader has satisfactorily performed full-time supervision of TAB work in the field for not less than 3 years immediately preceding this contract's bid opening date.

TAB team field technicians: Names and documented evidence that each field technician has satisfactorily assisted a TAB team field leader in performance of TAB work in the field for not less than one year immediately preceding this contract's bid opening date.

Current certificates: Registrations and certifications are current, and valid for the duration of this contract. Renew Certifications which expire prior to completion of the TAB work, in a timely manner so that there is no lapse in registration or certification. TAB agency or TAB team personnel without a current registration or current certification are not to perform TAB work on this contract.

b. TAB Team Members: TAB team approved to accomplish work on this contract are full-time employees of the TAB agency. No other personnel is allowed to do TAB work on this contract.

c. Replacement of TAB team members: Replacement of members may occur if each new member complies with the applicable personnel qualifications and each is approved by the Contracting Officer.

1.5.1.1 TAB Standard

Perform TAB in accordance with the requirements of the standard under which the TAB Firm's qualifications are approved, i.e., AABC MN-1, NEBB PROCEDURAL STANDARDS, or SMACNA 1780 unless otherwise specified herein. All recommendations and suggested practices contained in the TAB Standard are considered mandatory. Use the provisions of the TAB Standard, including checklists, report forms, etc., as nearly as practical, to satisfy the Contract requirements. Use the TAB Standard for all aspects of TAB, including qualifications for the TAB Firm and Specialist and calibration of TAB instruments. Where the instrument manufacturer calibration recommendations are more stringent than those listed in the TAB Standard, adhere to the manufacturer's recommendations.

All quality assurance provisions of the TAB Standard such as performance guarantees are part of this contract. For systems or system components not covered in the TAB Standard, TAB procedures must be developed by the TAB Specialist. Where new procedures, requirements, etc., applicable to the Contract requirements have been published or adopted by the body responsible for the TAB Standard used (AABC, NEBB, or TABB), the requirements and recommendations contained in these procedures and requirements are considered mandatory, including the latest requirements of ASHRAE 62.1.

1.5.1.2 Qualifications

a. TAB Firm

The TAB Firm must be either a member of AABC or certified by the NEBB or the TABB and certified in all categories and functions where measurements or performance are specified on the plans and specifications, including TAB of environmental systems.

Certification must be maintained for the entire duration of duties specified herein. If, for any reason, the firm loses subject certification during this period, the Contractor must immediately notify the Contracting Officer and submit another TAB Firm for approval. Any firm that has been the subject of disciplinary action by either the AABC, the NEBB, or the TABB within the five years preceding Contract Award is not be eligible to perform any duties related to the HVAC systems, including TAB. All work specified in this Section and in other related Sections to be performed by the TAB Firm will be considered invalid if the TAB Firm loses its certification prior to Contract completion and must be performed by an approved successor.

These TAB services are to assist the prime Contractor in performing the quality oversight for which it is responsible. The TAB Firm must be a prime subcontractor of the Contractor and be financially and corporately independent of the mechanical subcontractor, reporting directly to and paid by the Contractor.

b. TAB Specialist

The TAB Specialist must be either a member of AABC, an experienced technician of the Firm certified by the NEBB, or a Supervisor certified by the TABB. The certification must be maintained for the entire duration of duties specified herein. If, for any reason, the Specialist loses subject certification during this period, immediately notify the Contracting Officer and submit another TAB Specialist for approval. Any individual that has been the subject of disciplinary action by either the AABC, the NEBB, or the TABB within the five years preceding Contract Award is not eligible to perform any duties related to the HVAC systems, including TAB. All work specified in this Section and in other related Sections performed by the TAB Specialist will be considered invalid if the TAB Specialist loses its certification prior to Contract completion and must be performed by the approved successor.

c. TAB Specialist Responsibilities

TAB Specialist responsibilities include all TAB work specified herein and in related sections under his direct guidance. The TAB specialist is required to be onsite on a daily basis to direct TAB efforts. The TAB Specialist must participate in the commissioning process.

1.5.1.3 TAB Related HVAC Submittals

The TAB Specialist must prepare a list of the submittals from the Contract Submittal Register that relate to the successful accomplishment of all HVAC TAB. Accompany the submittals identified on this list with a letter of approval signed and dated by the TAB Specialist when submitted to the Government. Ensure that the location and details of ports, terminals, connections, etc., necessary to perform TAB are identified on the submittals.

1.5.2 Responsibilities

The Contractor is responsible for ensuring compliance with the requirements of this section. The following delineation of specific work responsibilities is specified to facilitate TAB execution of the various work efforts by personnel from separate organizations. This breakdown of specific duties is specified to facilitate adherence to the schedule listed in the paragraph TAB SUBMITTAL AND WORK SCHEDULE.

1.5.2.1 Contractor

- a. TAB personnel: Ensure that the TAB work is accomplished by a group meeting the requirements specified in the paragraph TAB PERSONNEL QUALIFICATION REQUIREMENTS.
- b. Pre-TAB meeting: Attend the meeting with the TAB Supervisor, and ensure that a representative is present for the sheet metal contractor, mechanical contractor, electrical contractor, and automatic temperature controls contractor.
- c. HVAC documentation: Furnish one complete set of the following HVAC-related documentation to the TAB agency:
 - (1) Contract drawings and specifications
 - (2) Approved submittal data for equipment
 - (3) Construction work schedule
 - (4) Up-to-date revisions and change orders for the previously listed items
- d. Submittal and work schedules: Ensure that the schedule for submittals and work required by this section and specified in the paragraph TAB SUBMITTAL AND WORK SCHEDULE is met.
- e. Coordination of supporting personnel:

Provide the technical personnel, such as factory representatives or HVAC controls installer required by the TAB field team to support the TAB field measurement work.

Provide equipment mechanics to operate HVAC equipment and ductwork mechanics to provide the field designated test ports to enable TAB field team to accomplish the DALT and the TAB field measurement work. Ensure these support personnel are present at the times required by the TAB team, and cause no delay in the DALT and the TAB field work.

Conversely, ensure that the HVAC controls installer has required support from the TAB team field leader to complete the controls check out.
- f. Deficiencies: Ensure that the TAB Agency supervisor submits all Design/Construction deficiency notifications directly to the Contracting officer within 3 days after the deficiency is encountered. Further, ensure that all such notification submittals are complete with explanation, including documentation, detailing deficiencies.
- g. Prerequisite HVAC work: Complete check out and debugging of HVAC equipment, ducts, and controls prior to the TAB engineer arriving at the project site to begin the TAB work. Debugging includes searching for and eliminating malfunctioning elements in the HVAC system installations, and verifying all adjustable devices are functioning as designed. Include as prerequisite work items, the deficiencies pointed out by the TAB team supervisor in the design review report.
- h. Prior to the TAB field team's arrival, ensure completion of the applicable inspections and work items listed in the TAB team supervisor's pre-field engineering report. Do not allow the TAB team to commence TAB field work until all of the following are completed.

- (1) HVAC system installations are fully complete.
- (2) HVAC prerequisite checkout work lists specified in the paragraph PRE-FIELD TAB ENGINEERING REPORT are completed, submitted, and approved. Ensure that the TAB Agency gets a copy of the approved
- (3) HVAC system filters are clean for both Season 1 and Season 2 TAB field work.

i. Advance notice: Furnish to the Contracting Officer with advance

1.5.2.2 TAB Agency for the commencement of the TAB field work

Provide the services of a TAB team which complies with the requirements of the paragraph INDEPENDENT TAB AGENCY PERSONNEL QUALIFICATIONS. The work to be performed by the TAB agency is limited to testing, adjusting, and balancing of HVAC air and water systems to satisfy the requirements of this specification section.

1.5.2.3 TAB Team Supervisor

- a. Overall management: Supervise and manage the overall TAB team work effort, including preliminary and technical DALT and TAB procedures and TAB team field work.
- b. Pre-TAB meeting: Attend meeting with Contractor.
- c. Design review report: Review project specifications and accompanying drawings to verify that the air systems and water systems are designed in such a way that the TAB engineer can accomplish the work in compliance with the requirements of this section. Verify the presence and location of permanently installed test ports and other devices needed, including gauge cocks, thermometer wells, flow control devices, circuit setters, balancing valves, and manual volume dampers.
- d. Support required: Specify the technical support personnel required from the Contractor other than the TAB agency; such as factory representatives for temperature controls or for complex equipment. Inform the Contractor in writing of the support personnel needed and when they are needed. Furnish the notice as soon as the need is anticipated, either with the design review report, or the pre-field
 - f. Pre-field engineering report: Utilizing the following HVAC-related documentation; contract drawings and specifications, approved submittal data for equipment, up-to-date revisions and change orders; prepare this report.
 - g. Prerequisite HVAC work checklist: Ensure the Contractor gets a copy of this checklist at the same time as the pre-field engineering report is
 - j. Technical Assistance for TAB Work: Provide immediate technical assistance to the TAB field team for the TAB work.
 - (1) TAB field visit: At the midpoint of the TAB field work effort, visit the contract site to inspect the HVAC installation and the progress of the TAB field work. Conduct site visit full-time for a
 - k. Certified TAB report: Certify the TAB report. This certification includes the following work:
 - (1) Review: Review the TAB field data report. From this field report, prepare the certified TAB report.
 - (2) Verification: Verify adherence, by the TAB field team, to the TAB plan prescribed by the pre-field engineering report and verify adherence to the procedures specified in this section.
 - l. Design/Construction deficiencies: Within 3 working days after the TAB Agency has encountered any design or construction deficiencies, the TAB Supervisor must submit written notification directly to the Contracting Officer, with a separate copy to the Contractor, of all such deficiencies. Provide in this submittal a complete explanation, including supporting documentation, detailing deficiencies. Where deficiencies are encountered that are believed to adversely impact successful completion of TAB, the TAB Agency must issue notice and request direction in the notification submittal.
- m. TAB Field Check: The TAB team supervisor must attend and supervise TAB field check.

1.5.2.4 TAB Team Field Leader

- a. Field manager: Manage, in the field, the accomplishment of the work specified in Part 3, EXECUTION.
- b. Full time: Be present at the contract site when TAB field work is being performed by the TAB team; ensure day-to-day TAB team work accomplishments are in compliance with this section.
- c. Prerequisite HVAC work: Do not bring the TAB team to the contract site until a copy of the prerequisite HVAC Checklist, with all work items certified by the Contractor to be working as designed, reaches the office of the TAB Agency.

1 Conduct TAB of the indicated existing systems and equipment and submit the specified TAB reports for approval. Conduct this TAB work in accordance with the requirements of this section.

1.5.4.1 Projects with Phased Construction

This specification section is structured as though the HVAC construction, and thereby the TAB work, will be completed in a single phase. When the construction is completed in phases, the TAB work must be planned, completed, and accepted for each construction phase.

a. Phasing of Work

This specification section is structured as though the HVAC construction, and thereby the TAB work, is going to be completed in a single phase. All elements of the TAB work are addressed on this premise. When a contract is to be completed in construction phases, including the TAB work, the TAB work must be planned for, completed and approved by the Contracting Officer with each phase. An example of this case would be one contract that requires the rehabilitation of the HVAC in each of several separated buildings. At the completion of the

1.5.4.2 TAB Submittal and Work Schedule reports and submit as one document.

Comply with additional requirements specified in Appendix C: DALT AND TAB SUBMITTAL AND WORK SCHEDULE included at the end of this section.

Submit this schedule, and TAB Schematic Drawings, adapted for this particular contract, to the Contracting Officer (CO) for review and approval. Include with the submittal the planned calendar dates for each submittal or work item. Resubmit an updated version for CO approval every 90 calendar days. Compliance with the following schedule is the Contractor's responsibility.

Qualify TAB Personnel: Within 45 calendar days after date of contract award, submit TAB agency and personnel qualifications.

Pre-TAB Meeting: Within 30 calendar days after the date of approval of the TAB agency and personnel, meet with the COTR.

Design Review Report: Within 60 calendar days after the date of the TAB agency personnel qualifications approval, submit design review report.

Pre-Field TAB Engineering Report: Within 7 calendar days after approval of the TAB agency Personnel Qualifications, submit the Pre-Field TAB Engineering Report.

Prerequisite HVAC Work Check Out List and Advanced Notice For TAB Field Work: At a minimum of 115 calendar days prior to CCD, submit prerequisite HVAC work check out list certified as complete, and submit advance notice of commencement of TAB field work.

a. TAB Design Review Report

Submit typed report describing omissions and deficiencies in the HVAC system's design that would preclude the TAB team from accomplishing the duct leakage testing work and the TAB work requirements of this section. Provide a complete explanation including supporting documentation detailing the design deficiency.

1.5.4.3 TAB Pre-Field Engineering Report the case.

Submit report containing the following information:

- a. Step-by-step TAB procedure:
 - (1) Strategy: Describe the method of approach to the TAB field work from start to finish. Include in this description a complete methodology for accomplishing each seasonal TAB field work session.
 - (2) Air System Diagrams: Use the contract drawings and duct fabrication drawings if available to provide air system diagrams in the report showing the location of all terminal outlet supply, return, exhaust and transfer registers, grilles and diffusers. Use a key numbering system on the diagrams which identifies each outlet contained in the outlet airflow report sheets. Show intended locations of all traverses and static pressure readings.
 - (3) Procedural steps: Delineate fully the intended procedural steps to be taken by the TAB field team to accomplish the required TAB work of each air distribution system and each water distribution system. Include intended procedural steps for TAB work for subsystems and system components.
- b. Pre-field data: Submit AABC or NEBB or SMACNA 1780 data report forms with the following pre-field information filled in:
 - (1) Design data obtained from system drawings, specifications, and approved submittals.
 - (2) Notations detailing additional data to be obtained from the contract site by the TAB field team.
 - (3) Designate the actual data to be measured in the TAB field work.
 - (4) Provide a list of the types of instruments, and the measuring range of each, which are anticipated to be used for measuring in the TAB field work. By means of a keying scheme, specify on each TAB data report form submitted, which instruments will be used for measuring each item of TAB data. If the selection of which instrument to use, is to be made in the field, specify from which instruments the choice will be made. Place the instrument key number in the blank space where the measured data would be entered.
- c. Prerequisite HVAC work checkout list: Provide a list of inspections and work items which are to be completed by the Contractor. This list must be acted upon and completed by the Contractor and then submitted and approved by the Contracting Officer prior to the TAB team coming to the contract site.

At a minimum, a list of the applicable inspections and work items listed in the NEBB PROCEDURAL STANDARDS, Section III, "Preliminary TAB Procedures" under paragraphs titled, "Air Distribution System Inspection" and "Hydronic Distribution System Inspection" must be provided for each separate system to be TAB'd.

1.5.5 Instrument Calibration Certificates

It is the responsibility of the TAB firm to provide instrumentation that meets the minimum requirements of the standard under which the TAB Firm's qualifications are approved for use on a project. Instrumentation must be in proper operating condition and must be applied in accordance with the instrumentation's manufacturer recommendations.

All instrumentation must bear a valid NIST traceable calibration certificate during field work and during government acceptance testing. All instrumentation must be calibrated within no later than one year of the date of TAB work or government acceptance testing field work.

1.5.6 TAB Standard

Perform TAB in accordance with the requirements of the standard under which the TAB Firm's qualifications are approved, i.e., AABC MN-1, NEBB PROCEDURAL STANDARDS, or SMACNA 1780 unless otherwise specified herein. All recommendations and suggested practices contained in the TAB Standard are considered mandatory. Use the provisions of the TAB Standard, including checklists, report forms, etc., as nearly as practical, to satisfy the Contract requirements. Use the TAB Standard for all aspects of TAB, including qualifications for the TAB Firm and Specialist and calibration of TAB instruments. Where the instrument manufacturer calibration recommendations are more stringent than those listed in the TAB Standard, adhere to the manufacturer's recommendations.

All quality assurance provisions of the TAB Standard such as performance guarantees are part of this contract. For systems or system components not covered in the TAB Standard, TAB procedures must be developed by the TAB Specialist. Where new procedures, requirements, etc., applicable to the Contract requirements have been published or adopted by the body responsible for the TAB Standard used (AABC, NEBB, or TABB), the requirements and recommendations contained in these procedures and requirements are considered mandatory, including the latest requirements of ASHRAE 62.1.

1.5.7 Qualifications

1.5.7.1 TAB Firm

The TAB Firm must be either a member of AABC or certified by the NEBB or the TABB and certified in all categories and functions where measurements or performance are specified on the plans and specifications.

Certification must be maintained for the entire duration of duties specified herein. If, for any reason, the firm loses subject certification during this period, the Contractor must immediately notify the Contracting Officer and submit another TAB Firm for approval. Any firm that has been the subject of disciplinary action by either the AABC, the NEBB, or the TABB within the five years preceding Contract Award is not eligible to perform any duties related to the HVAC systems, including TAB. All work specified in this Section and in other related Sections to be performed by the TAB Firm will be considered invalid if the TAB Firm loses its certification prior to Contract completion and must be performed by an approved successor.

These TAB services are to assist the prime Contractor in performing the quality oversight for which it is responsible. The TAB Firm must be a prime subcontractor of the Contractor and be financially and corporately independent of the mechanical subcontractor, reporting directly to and paid by the Contractor.

1.5.7.2 TAB Specialist

The TAB Specialist must be either a member of AABC, an experienced technician of the Firm certified by the NEBB, or a Supervisor certified by the TABB. The certification must be maintained for the entire duration of duties specified herein. If, for any reason, the Specialist loses subject certification during this period, immediately notify the Contracting Officer and submit another TAB Specialist for approval. Any individual that has been the subject of disciplinary action by either the AABC, the NEBB, or the TABB within the five years preceding Contract Award is not eligible to perform any duties related to the HVAC systems, including TAB. All work specified in this Section and in other related Sections performed by the TAB Specialist will be considered invalid if the TAB Specialist loses its certification prior to Contract completion and must be performed by the approved successor.

1.5.7.3 TAB Specialist Responsibilities

TAB Specialist responsibilities include all TAB work specified herein and in related sections under his direct guidance. The TAB specialist is required to be onsite on a daily basis to direct TAB

efforts.

1.5.7.4 TAB Related HVAC Submittals

The TAB Specialist must prepare a list of the submittals from the Contract Submittal Register that relate to the successful accomplishment of all HVAC TAB. Accompany the submittals identified on this list with a letter of approval signed and dated by the TAB Specialist when submitted to the Government. Ensure that the location and details of ports, terminals, connections, etc., necessary to perform TAB are identified on the submittals.

1.5.8 Responsibilities

The Contractor is responsible for ensuring compliance with the requirements of this section. The following delineation of specific work responsibilities is specified to facilitate TAB execution of the various work efforts by personnel from separate organizations. This breakdown of specific duties is specified to facilitate adherence to the schedule listed in the paragraph TAB SUBMITTAL AND WORK SCHEDULE.

1.5.8.1 Contractor

- a. TAB personnel: Ensure that the DALT work and the TAB work is accomplished by a group meeting the requirements specified in the paragraph TAB PERSONNEL QUALIFICATION REQUIREMENTS.
- b. Pre-DALT/TAB meeting: Attend the meeting with the TAB Supervisor, and ensure that a representative is present for the sheetmetal contractor, mechanical contractor, electrical contractor, and automatic temperature controls contractor.
- c. HVAC documentation: Furnish one complete set of the following HVAC-related documentation to the TAB agency:
 - (1) Contract drawings and specifications
 - (2) Approved submittal data for equipment
 - (3) Construction work schedule
 - (4) Up-to-date revisions and change orders for the previously listed items
- d. Submittal and work schedules: Ensure that the schedule for submittals and work required by this section and specified in the paragraph TAB SUBMITTAL AND WORK SCHEDULE is met.
- e. Coordination of supporting personnel:

Provide the technical personnel, such as factory representatives or HVAC controls installer required by the TAB field team to support the DALT and the TAB field measurement work.

Provide equipment mechanics to operate HVAC equipment and ductwork mechanics to provide the field designated test ports to enable TAB field team to accomplish the DALT and the TAB field measurement work. Ensure these support personnel are present at the times required by the TAB team, and cause no delay in the DALT and the TAB field work.

Conversely, ensure that the HVAC controls installer has required support from the TAB team field leader to complete the controls check out.
- f. Deficiencies: Ensure that the TAB Agency supervisor submits all Design/Construction deficiency notifications directly to the Contracting officer within 3 days after the deficiency is encountered. Further, ensure that all such notification submittals are complete with explanation, including

documentation, detailing deficiencies.

- g. Prerequisite HVAC work: Complete check out and debugging of HVAC equipment, ducts, and controls prior to the TAB engineer arriving at the project site to begin the TAB work. Debugging includes searching for and eliminating malfunctioning elements in the HVAC system installations, and verifying all adjustable devices are functioning as designed. Include as prerequisite work items, the deficiencies pointed out by the TAB team supervisor in the design review report.
- h. Prior to the TAB field team's arrival, ensure completion of the applicable inspections and work items listed in the TAB team supervisor's pre-field engineering report. Do not allow the TAB team to commence TAB field work until all of the following are completed.
 - (1) HVAC system installations are fully complete.
 - (2) HVAC prerequisite checkout work lists specified in the paragraph PRE-FIELD TAB ENGINEERING REPORT are completed, submitted, and approved. Ensure that the TAB Agency gets a copy of the approved prerequisite HVAC work checklist.
 - (3) DALT field checks for all systems are completed.
 - (4) HVAC system filters are clean for both Season 1 and Season 2 TAB field work.
- i. Advance notice: Furnish to the Contracting Officer with advance written notice for the commencement of the DALT field work and for the commencement of the TAB field work.
- j. Insulation work: For required DALT work, ensure that insulation is not installed on ducts to be DALT'd until DALT work on the subject ducts is complete. Later, ensure that openings in duct and machinery insulation coverings for TAB test ports are marked, closed and sealed.

1.5.8.2 TAB Agency

Provide the services of a TAB team which complies with the requirements of the paragraph INDEPENDENT TAB AGENCY PERSONNEL QUALIFICATIONS. The work to be performed by the TAB agency is limited to testing, adjusting, and balancing of HVAC air and water systems to satisfy the requirements of this specification section.

1.5.8.3 TAB Team Supervisor

- a. Overall management: Supervise and manage the overall TAB team work effort, including preliminary and technical DALT and TAB procedures and TAB team field work.
- b. Pre-TAB meeting: Attend meeting with Contractor.
- c. Design review report: Review project specifications and accompanying drawings to verify that the air systems and water systems are designed in such a way that the TAB engineer can accomplish the work in compliance with the requirements of this section. Verify the presence and location of permanently installed test ports and other devices needed, including gauge cocks, thermometer wells, flow control devices, circuit setters, balancing valves, and manual volume dampers.
- d. Support required: Specify the technical support personnel required from the Contractor other than the TAB agency; such as factory representatives for temperature controls or for complex equipment. Inform the Contractor in writing of the support personnel needed and when they are needed. Furnish the notice as soon as the need is anticipated, either with the design review report, or the pre-field
- f. Pre-field engineering report: Utilizing the following HVAC-related documentation; contract drawings and specifications, approved submittal data for equipment, up-to-date revisions and change orders; prepare this report.
- g. Prerequisite HVAC work checklist: Ensure the Contractor gets a copy of this checklist at the

same time as the pre-field engineering report is submitted.

1.5.9 Test Report

1 Submit: in the following manner:

- a. Report format: Submit the completed pre-field data forms approved in the pre-field TAB Engineering Report completed by TAB field team, reviewed and certified by the TAB supervisor. Bind the report with a waterproof front and back cover. Include a table of contents identifying by page number the location of each report. Report forms and report data must be typewritten. Handwritten report forms or report data are not acceptable.
- b. Temperatures: On each TAB report form reporting TAB work accomplished on HVAC thermal energy transfer equipment, include the indoor and outdoor dry bulb temperature range and indoor and outdoor wet bulb temperature range within which the TAB data was recorded. Include in the TAB report continuous time versus temperature recording data of wet and dry bulb temperatures for the rooms, or zones, as designated in the Measure and record data only after the HVAC systems installations are complete, the systems fully balanced and the HVAC systems controls
- c. Static Pressure Profiles: Report static pressure profiles for air duct systems including:
Report static pressure data for all supply, return, relief, exhaust and outside air ducts for the systems listed. Include the following in the static pressure report data, in addition to AABC/NEBB/TABB required data:
 - a. Report supply fan, return fan, relief fan, and exhaust fan inlet and discharge static pressures.
 - b. Report static pressure drop across chilled water coils, DX coils, hot water coils, steam coils, electric resistance heating coils and heat reclaim devices installed in unit cabinetry or the system ductwork.
 - c. Report static pressure drop across outside air, return air, and supply air automatic control dampers, both proportional and two-position, installed in unit cabinetry.
 - d. Report static pressure drop across air filters, acoustic silencers, moisture eliminators, air flow straighteners, air flow measuring stations or other pressure drop producing specialty items installed in unit cabinetry, or in the system ductwork. Examples of these specialty items are smoke detectors, white sound generators, RF shielding, wave guides, security bars, blast valves, small pipes passing through ductwork, and duct mounted humidifiers.

Do not report static pressure drop across duct fittings provided for the sole purpose of conveying air, such as elbows, transitions, offsets, plenums, manual dampers, and branch
 - e. Report static pressure readings of supply air, return air, exhaust/relief air, and outside air in duct at the point where
 - f. VAV Terminals: Take readings at inlet static pressure at VAV terminal box primary air branch ducts.
- d. Duct Traverses: Report duct traverses for main supply, return, exhaust, relief and outside air ducts. This includes all ducts, including those which lack 7 1/2 duct diameters upstream and 2 1/2 duct diameters downstream of straight duct unobstructed by duct fittings/offsets/elbows. The TAB Agency must evaluate and report findings on the duct traverses taken. Evaluate the suitability of the duct traverse measurement based on satisfying the qualifications for a pilot traverse plane as defined by AMCA 203, "Field Measurements", Section 8, paragraph 8.3, "Location of Traverse Plane."

- e. Instruments: List the types of instruments actually used to measure the tab data. Include in the listing each instrument's unique identification number, calibration date, and calibration expiration date.

Instrumentation, used for taking wet bulb temperature readings must provide accuracy of plus or minus 5 percent at the measured face velocities. Submit instrument manufacturer's literature to document instrument accuracy performance is in compliance with that specified.

- f. Certification: Include the typed name of the TAB supervisor and the dated signature of the TAB supervisor.
- g. Performance Curves: The TAB Supervisor must include, in the TAB Reports, factory pump curves and fan curves for pumps and fans TAB'd on the job.
- h. Calibration Curves: The TAB Supervisor must include, in the TAB Reports, a factory calibration curve for installed flow control balancing valves, flow venturi's and flow orifices TAB'd on the job.

PART 2 PRODUCTS NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 TAB PROCEDURES

3.1.1.1 Units With Coils

Report heating and cooling performance capacity tests for hot water, chilled water, DX and steam coils for the purpose of verifying that the coils meet the indicated design capacity. Submit the following data and calculations with the coil test reports:

- a. For air handlers with capacities greater than 7.5 tons (90,000 Btu) cooling, such as factory manufactured units, central built-up units and rooftop units, conduct capacity tests in accordance with AABC MN-4, procedure 3.5, "Coil Capacity Testing."

Do not determine entering and leaving wet and dry bulb temperatures by single point measurement, but by the average of multiple readings in compliance with paragraph 3.5-5, "Procedures", (in subparagraph d.) of AABC MN-4, Procedure 3.5, "Coil Capacity Testing."

Submit part-load coil performance data from the coil manufacturer converting test conditions to design conditions; use the data for the purpose of verifying that the coils meet the indicated design capacity in compliance with AABC MN-4, Procedure 3.5, "Coil Capacity Testing," paragraph 3.5.7, "Actual Capacity Vs. Design Capacity" (in subparagraph c.).

- b. For units with capacities of 7.5 tons (90,000 Btu) or less, such as fan coil units, duct mounted reheat coils associated with VAV terminal units, and unitary units, such as through-the-wall heat pumps:

Determine the apparent coil capacity by calculations using single point measurement of entering and leaving wet and dry bulb temperatures; submit the calculations with the coil reports.

3.1.1.2 Air Handling Units

Air handling unit systems including fans (air handling unit fans, exhaust fans and winter ventilation fans), coils, ducts, plenums, mixing boxes, terminal units, variable air volume boxes, and air distribution devices for supply air, return air, outside air, mixed air relief air, and makeup air.

3.1.1.3 Makeup Air Units

Makeup air unit systems including fans, coils, ducts, plenums, and louvers for supply air, outside air, and mixed air.

3.1.2 TAB Water Distribution Systems

3.1.2.1 Chilled Water

Chilled water systems including coils, system balance valves and flow

3.1.3 TAB Work on Performance Tests

3.1.3.1 Performance Tests

Accomplish proportional balancing TAB work on the air distribution systems and water distribution systems, in other words, accomplish adjusting and balancing of the air flows and water flows, any time during the duration of this contract, subject to the limitations specified elsewhere in this section. However, accomplish, within the following seasonal limitations, TAB work on HVAC systems which directly transfer thermal energy.

3.1.3.2 Ambient Temperatures

On each tab report form used for recording data, record the outdoor and indoor ambient dry bulb temperature range and the outdoor and indoor ambient wet bulb temperature range within which the report form's data was recorded. Record these temperatures at beginning and at the end of data taking.

3.1.3.3 Coils

Report heating and cooling performance capacity tests for hot water, chilled water, for the purpose of verifying that the coils meet the indicated design capacity. Submit the following data and calculations with the coil test reports:

- a. For Central station air handlers with capacities greater than 7.5 tons (90,000 Btu) cooling, such as factory manufactured units, central built-up units and rooftop units, conduct capacity tests in accordance with AABC MN-4, procedure 3.5, "Coil Capacity Testing."

Entering and leaving wet and dry bulb temperatures are not determined by single point measurement, but by the average of multiple readings in compliance with paragraph 3.5-5, "Procedures", (in subparagraph d.) of AABC MN-4, Procedure 3.5, "Coil Capacity Testing."

Submit part-load coil performance data from the coil manufacturer converting test conditions to design conditions; use the data for the purpose of verifying that the coils meet the indicated design capacity in compliance with AABC MN-4, Procedure 3.5, "Coil Capacity Testing," paragraph 3.5.7, "Actual Capacity Vs. Design Capacity" (in subparagraph c.).

- b. For units with capacities of 7.5 tons (90,000 Btu) or less, such as fan coil units, duct mounted reheat coils associated with VAV terminal units, and unitary units, such as through-the-wall heat pumps:

Determine the apparent coil capacity by calculations using single point measurement of entering and leaving wet and dry bulb temperatures;

3.1.4 Workmanship Calculations with the coil reports

Conduct TAB work on the HVAC systems until measured flow rates are within plus or minus 5 percent of the design flow rates as specified or indicated on the contract documents. This TAB

work includes adjustment of balancing valves, balancing dampers, and sheaves. Further, this TAB work includes changing out fan sheaves and pump impellers if required to obtain air and water flow rates specified or indicated. If, with these adjustments and equipment changes, the specified or indicated design flow rates cannot be attained, contact the Contracting Officer for direction.

3.1.5 Deficiencies

Strive to meet the intent of this section to maximize the performance of the equipment as designed and installed. However, if deficiencies in equipment design or installation prevent TAB work from being accomplished within the range of design values specified in the paragraph WORKMANSHIP, provide written notice as soon as possible to the Contractor and the Contracting Officer describing the deficiency and recommended correction.

Responsibility for correction of installation deficiencies is the Contractor's. If a deficiency is in equipment design, call the TAB team supervisor for technical assistance. Responsibility for reporting design deficiencies to Contractor is the TAB team supervisor's.

3.1.6 TAB Reports

Additional requirements for TAB Reports are specified in Appendix B REPORTS - TAB

3.1.7 Quality Assurance - COTR TAB Field Acceptance Testing

3.1.7.1 TAB Field Acceptance Testing

During the field acceptance testing, verify, in the presence of the COTR, random selections of data (water, air quantities, air motion,) recorded in the TAB Report. Points and areas for field acceptance testing are to be selected by the COTR. Measurement and test procedures are the same as approved for TAB work for the TAB Report.

Field acceptance testing includes verification of TAB Report data recorded for the following equipment groups:

- Group 1: All air handling units (central stations).
- Group 2: 25 percent of the VAV terminal boxes
Further, if any data on the TAB Report for Groups 2 through 5 is found not to fall within the range of plus 5 to minus 5 percent of the TAB Report data, additional group data verification is required in the presence of the COTR. Verify TAB Report data for one additional piece of equipment in that group. Continue this additional group data verification until Out-of-tolerance data ceases to be found.

3.1.7.2 Additional COTR TAB Field Acceptance Testing

If any of the acceptance testing measurements for a given equipment group is found not to fall within the range of plus 5 to minus 5 percent of the TAB Report data, terminate data verification for all affected data for that group. The affected data for the given group will be disapproved. Make the necessary corrections and prepare a revised TAB Report. Reschedule acceptance testing of the revised report data with the COTR.

3.1.7.3 Prerequisite for Approval

Compliance with the field acceptance testing requirements of this section is a prerequisite for the final Contracting Officer approval of the TAB Report submitted.

3.2 MARKING OF SETTINGS

Upon the final TAB work approval, permanently mark the settings of HVAC adjustment devices

including valves, gauges, splitters, and dampers so that adjustment can be restored if disturbed at any time. Provide permanent markings clearly indicating the settings on the adjustment devices which result in the data reported on the submitted TAB report.

3.3 MARKING OF TEST PORTS

The TAB team is to permanently and legibly mark and identify the location points of the duct test ports. If the ducts have exterior insulation, make these markings on the exterior side of the duct insulation. Show the location of test ports on the as-built mechanical drawings with dimensions given where the test port is covered by exterior insulation.

3.4 APPENDICES

Appendix A	WORK DESCRIPTIONS OF PARTICIPANTS
Appendix B	REPORTS - TAB
Appendix C	TAB SUBMITTAL AND WORK SCHEDULE
Appendix D	REQUIREMENTS FOR DUCT AIR LEAKTESTING

Appendix A

WORK DESCRIPTIONS OF PARTICIPANTS

The Contractor is responsible for ensuring compliance with all requirements of this specification section. However, the following delineation of specific work items is provided to facilitate and coordinate execution of the various work efforts by personnel from separate organizations.

1. Contractor
 - a. HVAC documentation: Provide pertinent contract documentation to the TAB Firm, to include the following: the contract drawings and specifications; copies of the approved submittal data for all HVAC equipment, air distribution devices, and air/water measuring/balancing devices; the construction work schedule; and other applicable documents requested by the TAB Firm. Provide the TAB Firm copies of contract revisions and modifications as they occur.
 - b. Schedules: Ensure the requirements specified under the paragraph "DALT and TAB Schedule" are met.
 - c. Pre- TAB meeting: Arrange and conduct the Pre- TAB meeting. Ensure that a representative is present for the sheet metal contractor, the mechanical contractor, the electrical contractor, and the automatic temperature controls contractor.
 - d. Coordinate Support: Provide and coordinate support personnel required by the TAB Firm in order to accomplish the TAB field work. Support personnel may include factory representatives, HVAC controls installers, HVAC equipment mechanics, sheet metal workers, pipe fitters, and insulators. Ensure support personnel are present at the work site at the times required.
 - e. Correct Deficiencies: Ensure the notifications of Construction Deficiencies are provided as specified herein. Refer to the paragraph CONSTRUCTION DEFICIENCIES. Correct each deficiency as soon as practical with the Contracting Officer, and submit revised schedules and other required documentation.
 - f. Pre-TAB Work Checklists: Complete check out and debugging of HVAC equipment, ducts, and controls prior to the TAB engineer arriving at the project site to begin the TAB work. Debugging includes searching for and eliminating malfunctioning elements in the HVAC system installations, and verifying all adjustable devices are functioning as designed. Include as pre-TAB work checklist items, the deficiencies pointed out by the TAB team supervisor in the design review report.

Prior to the TAB field team's arrival, ensure completion of the applicable inspections and work items listed in the TAB team supervisor's DALT and TAB Work Procedures Summary. Do not allow the TAB team to commence TAB field work until all of the following are completed.

- g. Give Notice of Testing: Submit advance notice of TAB field work accompanied by completed prerequisite HVAC Work List. Ensure the duct and piping systems are properly insulated and vapor sealed upon the successful completion and acceptance of the TAB work.
2. TAB Team Supervisor
 - a. Overall management: Supervise and manage the overall TAB team work effort, including preliminary and technical DALT and TAB procedures and TAB team field work.
 - b. Schedule: Ensure the requirements specified under the paragraph "TAB Schedule" are met.

- c. Submittals: Provide the submittals specified herein.
- d. Pre-TAB meeting: Attend meeting with Contractor. Ensure TAB personnel that will be involved in the TAB work under this contract attend the meeting.
- e. Design Review Report: Submit typed report describing omissions and deficiencies in the HVAC system's design that would preclude the TAB team from accomplishing the duct leakage testing work and the TAB work requirements of this section. Provide a complete explanation including supporting documentation detailing the design deficiency. State that no deficiencies are evident if that is the case.
- f. Support required: Specify the technical support personnel required from the Contractor other than the TAB agency; such as factory representatives for temperature controls or for complex equipment. Inform the Contractor in writing of the support personnel needed and when they are needed. Furnish the notice as soon as the need is anticipated, either with the design review report, or the DALT and TAB Procedures Summary, the during the DALT or TAB field work.

Ensure the Contractor is properly notified and aware of all support personnel needed to perform the TAB work. Maintain communication with the Contractor regarding support personnel throughout the duration of the TAB field work, including the TAB field acceptance testing checking.

Ensure all inspections and verifications for the Pre-TAB Checklists are completely and successfully conducted before TAB field work is performed.

- h. Technical Assistance: Provide technical assistance to the TAB field work.
 - i. Deficiencies Notification: Ensure the notifications of Construction Deficiencies are provided as specified herein. Comply with requirements of the paragraph CONSTRUCTION DEFICIENCIES. Resolve each deficiency as soon as practical and submit revised schedules and other required documentation.
 - j. Procedures: Develop the required TAB procedures for systems or system components not covered in the TAB Standard.
3. TAB Team Field Leader
- a. Field manager: Manage, in the field, the accomplishment of the work specified in Part 3, EXECUTION.
 - b. Full time: Be present at the contract site when TAB field work is being performed by the TAB team; ensure day-to-day TAB team work accomplishments are in compliance with this section.
 - c. Prerequisite HVAC work: Do not bring the TAB team to the contract site until a copy of the prerequisite HVAC work list, with all work items certified by the Contractor to be working as designed, reaches the office of the TAB Agency.

Appendix B

REPORTS -TAB

All submitted documentation must be typed, neat, and organized. All reports must have a waterproof front and back cover, a title page, a certification page, sequentially numbered pages throughout, and a table of contents. Tables, lists, and diagrams must be titled. Generate and submit for approval the following documentation:

1. TAB Work Execution Schedule

Submit a detailed schedule indicating the anticipated calendar date for each submittal and each portion of work required under this section. For each work entry, indicate the support personnel (such as controls provider, HVAC mechanic, etc.) that are needed to accomplish the work.

Arrange

schedule entries chronologically.

2. TAB Procedures Summary

Submit a detailed narrative describing all aspects of the TAB field work to be performed. Clearly distinguish between DALT information and TAB information. Include the following:

- a. A list of the intended procedural steps for the TAB field work from start to finish. Indicate how each type of data measurement will be obtained. Include what Contractor support personnel are required for each step, and the tasks they need to perform.
- b. A list of the project's submittals that are needed by the TAB Firm in order to meet this Contract's requirements.
- c. The schematic drawings to be used in the required reports, which may include building floor plans, mechanical room plans, duct system plans, and equipment elevations. Indicate intended TAB measurement locations, including where test ports need to be provided by the Contractor.
- d. The data presentation forms to be used in the report, with the preliminary information and initial design values filled in.
- e. A list of TAB instruments to be used, edited for this project, to include the instrument name and description, manufacturer, model number, scale range, published accuracy, most recent calibration date,
- g. A thorough checklist of the work items and inspections that need to be accomplished before the TAB field work can be performed. The Contractor must complete, submit, and receive approval of the Completed Pre-TAB Work Checklist before the TAB field work can be accomplished.
- i. The checklists specified above shall be individually developed and tailored specifically for the work under this contract. Refer to NEBB PROCEDURAL STANDARDS, Section III, "Preliminary TAB Procedures" under the paragraphs titled, "Air Distribution System Inspection" and "Hydronic Distribution System Inspection" for examples of items to include in the checklists.

3. Design Review Report

Submit report containing the following information:

- a. Review the contract specifications and drawings to verify that the TAB work can be successfully accomplished in compliance with the requirements of this section. Verify the presence and location of permanently installed test ports and other devices needed, including gauge cocks, thermometer wells, flow control devices, circuit setters, balancing

valves, and manual volume dampers.

- b. Submit a typed report describing omissions and deficiencies in the HVAC system's design that would preclude the TAB team from accomplishing the TAB work requirements of this section. Provide a complete explanation including supporting documentation detailing the design deficiency.
6. TAB Reports: Submit TAB Report for Proportional Balancing, Season 1, and Season 2 in the following manner:
 - a. Procedure Summary: Submit a copy of the approved TAB Procedures Summary. When applicable, provide notations describing how actual field procedures differed from the procedures listed.
 - b. Report format: Submit the completed data forms approved in the pre-field TAB Engineering Report completed by TAB field team, reviewed, approved and signed by the TAB supervisor. Bind the report with a waterproof front and back cover. Include a table of contents identifying by page number the location of each report. Report forms and report data shall be typewritten. Handwritten report forms or report data are not acceptable.
 - c. Temperatures: On each TAB report form reporting TAB work accomplished on HVAC thermal energy transfer equipment, include the indoor and outdoor dry bulb temperature range and indoor and outdoor wet bulb temperature range within which the TAB data was recorded. Include in the TAB report continuous time versus temperature recording data of wet and dry bulb temperatures for the rooms, or zones, as designated in the following list:
 - (1) Data shall be measured and compiled on a continuous basis for the period in which TAB work affecting those rooms is being done.
 - (2) Data shall be measured/recorded only after the HVAC systems installations are complete, the systems fully balanced and the HVAC systems controls operating in fully automatic mode. Provide a detailed explanation wherever a final measurement did not achieve the required value.
 - (3) Data may be compiled using direct digital controls trend logging where available. Otherwise, the Contractor shall temporarily install calibrated time versus temperature/humidity recorders for this purpose. The HVAC systems and controls shall have been fully operational a minimum of 24 hours in advance of commencing data compilation.
 - d. Air System Diagrams: Provided updated diagrams with final installed locations of all terminals and devices, any numbering changes, and actual test locations.
 - e. Air Static Pressure Profiles: Report static pressure profiles for air duct systems including: Report static pressure data for all supply, return, relief, exhaust and outside air ducts for the systems listed. The static pressure report data shall include, in addition to AABC or NEBB or TABB required data, the following:
 - (1) Report supply fan, inlet and discharge static pressures.
 - (2) Report static pressure drop across chilled water coils, hot water coils, in unit cabinetry or the system ductwork.
 - (3) Report static pressure drop across outside air, return air, and supply air automatic control dampers, both proportional and two-position, installed in unit cabinetry.
 - (4) Report static pressure drop across air filters, air flow measuring stations or other pressure drop producing specialty items installed in unit cabinetry, or in the system ductwork. Examples of these specialty items are smoke detectors, white sound generators, RF shielding, wave guides, security bars, blast valves, small pipes passing

through ductwork, and duct mounted humidifiers.

Do not report static pressure drop across duct fittings provided for the sole purpose of conveying air, such as elbows, transitions, offsets, plenums, manual dampers, and branch takes-offs.

- (5) Report static pressure drop across outside air and relief/exhaust air louvers.
 - (6) Report static pressure readings of supply air, return air, and outside air in duct at the point where these ducts connect to each air moving unit.
- f. Duct Transverses: Report duct traverses for main supply, return, exhaust, relief and outside air ducts. The TAB Agency shall evaluate and report findings on the duct traverses taken. Evaluate the suitability of the duct traverse measurement based on satisfying the qualifications for a pitot traverse plane as defined by AMCA 203, "Field Measurements", Section 8, paragraph 8.3, "Location of Traverse Plane".
 - g. Instruments: List the types of instruments actually used to measure the tab data. Include in the listing each instrument's unique identification number, calibration date, and calibration expiration date.

Instrumentation, used for taking wet bulb temperature readings shall provide accuracy of plus or minus 5 percent at the measured face velocities. Submit instrument manufacturer's literature to document instrument accuracy performance is in compliance with that specified.
 - h. Performance Curves: The TAB Supervisor shall include, in the TAB Reports, factory pump curves and fan curves for pumps and fans TAB'd on the job.
 - i. Calibration Curves: The TAB Supervisor shall include, in the TAB Reports, a factory calibration curve for installed flow control balancing valves, flow venturis and flow orifices TAB'd on the job.
 - j. Data From TAB Field Work: After completion of the TAB field work, prepare the TAB field data for TAB supervisor's review and approval signature, using the reporting forms approved in the pre-field engineering report. Data required by those approved data report forms shall be furnished by the TAB team. Except as approved otherwise in writing by the Contracting Officer, the TAB work and thereby the TAB report shall be considered incomplete until the TAB work is accomplished to within the accuracy range specified in the paragraph WORKMANSHIP.

Appendix C

TAB SUBMITTAL AND WORK SCHEDULE

Perform the following items of work in the order listed adhering to the dates schedule specified below.

Submit TAB Agency and TAB Personnel Qualifications: Within 42 calendar days
after date of contract award.

Submit the TAB personnel qualifications approval. Revise and re-submit this schedule 28 days
prior to commencement of work and 28 days prior to the commencement of TAB work.

Submit the TAB Work Procedures Summary: within 14 days after receipt of the
initial approved TAB Work Execution Schedule.

Meet with the COTR at the Pre-TAB Meeting: Within 28calendar days after
receipt of the approved initial TAB Execution Schedule.

Submit Design Review Report: Within 56 calendar days after the receipt of the
approved initial TAB Work Execution Schedule.

Complete TAB Work: Prior to CCD, complete all TAB work and submit final.

Receive the approved TAB report: Within 21 calendar days, receive the report from
Contracting Officer approved TAB report.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 07 00

THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL
SYSTEMS

02/13, CHG 7: 05/20

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only. At the discretion of the Government, the manufacturer of any material supplied will be required to furnish test reports pertaining to any of the tests necessary to assure compliance with the standard or standards referenced in this specification.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING
ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 90.1 - SI	(2013) Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings
ASHRAE 90.2	(2020) Energy-Efficient Design of Low-Rise Residential Buildings

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A167	(2011) Standard Specification for Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip
ASTM A240/A240M	(2020a) Standard Specification for Chromium and Chromium-Nickel Stainless Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip for Pressure Vessels and for General Applications
ASTM A580/A580M	(2018) Standard Specification for Stainless Steel Wire
ASTM B209	(2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate
ASTM B209M	(2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate (Metric)
ASTM C195	(2007; R 2013) Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Thermal Insulating Cement
ASTM C450	(2008) Standard Practice for Fabrication of Thermal Insulating Fitting Covers for NPS Piping, and Vessel Lagging
ASTM C533	(2017) Standard Specification for Calcium Silicate Block and Pipe Thermal Insulation

ASTM C534/C534M	(2020a) Standard Specification for Preformed Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Thermal Insulation in Sheet and Tubular Form
ASTM C547	(2019) Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Pipe Insulation
ASTM C552	(2021a) Standard Specification for Cellular Glass Thermal Insulation
ASTM C553	(2013; R 2019) Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Commercial and Industrial Applications
ASTM C585	(2010) Standard Practice for Inner and Outer Diameters of Thermal Insulation for Nominal Sizes of Pipe and Tubing
ASTM C591	(2021) Standard Specification for Unfaced Preformed Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation
ASTM C592	(2016) Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Blanket Insulation and Blanket-Type Pipe Insulation (Metal-Mesh Covered) (Industrial Type)
ASTM C610	(2015) Standard Specification for Molded Expanded Perlite Block and Pipe Thermal Insulation
ASTM C612	(2014; R 2019) Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Block and Board Thermal Insulation
ASTM C647	(2008; R 2013) Properties and Tests of Mastics and Coating Finishes for Thermal Insulation
ASTM C755	(2019b) Standard Practice for Selection of Water Vapor Retarders for Thermal Insulation
ASTM C795	(2008; R 2018) Standard Specification for Thermal Insulation for Use in Contact with Austenitic Stainless Steel
ASTM C916	(2020) Standard Specification for Adhesives for Duct Thermal Insulation
ASTM C920	(2018) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants
ASTM C921	(2010; R 2015) Standard Practice for Determining the Properties of Jacketing Materials for Thermal Insulation

ASTM C1126	(2018) Standard Specification for Faced or Unfaced Rigid Cellular Phenolic Thermal Insulation
ASTM C1136	(2021) Standard Specification for Flexible, Low Permeance Vapor Retarders for Thermal Insulation
ASTM C1710	(2011) Standard Guide for Installation of Flexible Closed Cell Preformed Insulation in Tube and Sheet Form
ASTM D882	(2012) Tensile Properties of Thin Plastic Sheeting
ASTM D2863	(2019) Standard Test Method for Measuring the Minimum Oxygen Concentration to Support Candle-Like Combustion of Plastics (Oxygen Index)
ASTM D5590	(2000; R 2010; E 2012) Standard Test Method for Determining the Resistance of Paint Films and Related Coatings to Fungal Defacement by Accelerated Four-Week Agar Plate Assay
ASTM E84	(2020) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
ASTM E96/E96M	(2016) Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials
ASTM E2231	(2019) Standard Practice for Specimen Preparation and Mounting of Pipe and Duct Insulation Materials to Assess Surface Burning Characteristics
ASTM E2336	(2020) Standard Test Methods for Fire Resistive Grease Duct Enclosure Systems

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH (CDPH)

CDPH SECTION 01350	(2010; Version 1.1) Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources using Environmental Chambers
--------------------	--

FM GLOBAL (FM)

FM APP GUIDE	(updated on-line) Approval Guide http://www.approvalguide.com/
--------------	---

GREEN SEAL (GS)

GS-36	(2013) Adhesives for Commercial Use
-------	-------------------------------------

INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATION FOR STANDARDIZATION (ISO)

ISO 2758 (2014) Paper - Determination of Bursting Strength

MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS
INDUSTRY (MSS)

MSS SP-58 (2018) Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design
and Manufacture, Selection, Application, and Installation

MIDWEST INSULATION CONTRACTORS ASSOCIATION (MICA)

MICA Insulation Stds (8th Ed) National Commercial & Industrial
Insulation Standards NATIONAL FIRE

PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 90A (2021) Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning
and Ventilating Systems

NFPA 90B (2021) Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating
and Air Conditioning Systems

NFPA 96 (2021) Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection
of Commercial Cooking Operations

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage SOUTH

COAST AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT DISTRICT (SCAQMD)

SCAQMD Rule 1168 (2017) Adhesive and Sealant Applications TECHNICAL

ASSOCIATION OF THE PULP AND PAPER INDUSTRY (TAPPI)

TAPPI T403 OM (2015) Bursting Strength of Paper

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

MIL-A-3316 (1987; Rev C; Am 2 1990) Adhesives,
Fire-Resistant, Thermal Insulation

MIL-A-24179 (1969; Rev A; Am 2 1980; Notice 1 1987;
Notice 2 2020) Adhesive, Flexible Unicellular-Plastic
Thermal Insulation

MIL-PRF-19565 (1988; Rev C) Coating Compounds, Thermal Insulation,
Fire- and Water-Resistant, Vapor-Barrier

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 94 (2013; Reprint May 2021) UL Standard for Safety
Tests for Flammability of Plastic Materials for Parts in
Devices and Appliances

UL 723 (2018) UL Standard for Safety Test for Surface
Burning Characteristics of Building Materials

UL 2818

(2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program For
Chemical Emissions For Building Materials, Finishes
And Furnishings

1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

1.2.1 General

Provide field-applied insulation and accessories on mechanical systems as specified herein; factory-applied insulation is specified under the piping, duct or equipment to be insulated. Field applied insulation materials required for use on Government-furnished items as listed in the SPECIAL CONTRACT REQUIREMENTS shall be furnished and installed by the Contractor.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are [for Contractor Quality Control approval.][for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government.] Submit the following in accordance with the Statement of Work:

Submit the three SD types, SD-02 Shop Drawings, SD-03 Product Data, and SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions at the same time for each system.

SD-02 Shop Drawings

MICA Plates; G

Pipe Insulation Systems and Associated Accessories Duct Insulation

Systems and Associated Accessories

Recycled content for insulation materials; S SD-03 Product

Data

Pipe Insulation Systems; G Duct

Insulation Systems; G

SD-04 Samples

Thermal Insulation; G Display

Samples; G

SD-07 Certificates

Indoor air quality for adhesives; S SD-08

Manufacturer's Instructions

Pipe Insulation Systems; G Duct

Insulation Systems; G

1.4 CERTIFICATIONS

1.4.1 Adhesives and Sealants

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by UL 2818 (Greenguard) Gold, SCS Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party programs that products meet the requirements of this Section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body. When product does not have certification, provide validation that product meets the indoor air quality product requirements cited herein.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.5.1 Installer Qualification

Qualified installers shall have successfully completed three or more similar type jobs within the last 5 years.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Materials shall be delivered in the manufacturer's unopened containers. Materials delivered and placed in storage shall be provided with protection from weather, humidity, dirt, dust and other contaminants. The Contracting Officer may reject insulation material and supplies that become dirty, dusty, wet, or contaminated by some other means. Packages or standard containers of insulation, jacket material, cements, adhesives, and coatings delivered for use, and samples required for approval shall have manufacturer's stamp or label attached giving the name of the manufacturer and brand, and a description of the material, date codes, and approximate shelf life (if applicable). Insulation packages and containers shall be asbestos free.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 STANDARD PRODUCTS

Provide materials which are the standard products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the manufacture of such products and that essentially duplicate items that have been in satisfactory use for at least 2 years prior to bid opening. Submit a complete list of materials, including manufacturer's descriptive technical literature, performance data, catalog cuts, and installation instructions. The product number, k-value, thickness and furnished accessories including adhesives, sealants and jackets for each mechanical system requiring insulation shall be included. The product data must be copyrighted, have an identifying or publication number, and shall have been published prior to the issuance date of this solicitation. Materials furnished under this section shall be submitted together in a booklet.

2.1.1 Insulation System

Provide insulation systems in accordance with the approved MICA National Insulation Standards plates as supplemented by this specification. Provide field-applied insulation for heating, ventilating, and cooling (HVAC) air distribution systems and piping systems that are located within, on, under, and adjacent to buildings; and for plumbing systems. Provide CFC and HCFC free insulation.

2.1.2 Surface Burning Characteristics

Unless otherwise specified, insulation must have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84. Flame spread, and smoke developed indexes, shall be determined by ASTM E84 or UL 723. Test insulation in the same density and installed thickness as the material to be used in the actual construction. Prepare and mount test specimens according to ASTM E2231.

2.2 MATERIALS

Provide insulation that meets or exceed the requirements of [[ASHRAE 90.2]. Insulation exterior shall

be cleanable, grease resistant, non-flaking and non-peeling. Materials shall be compatible and shall not contribute to corrosion, soften, or otherwise attack surfaces to which applied in either wet or dry state. Materials to be used on stainless steel surfaces shall meet ASTM C795 requirements. Calcium silicate shall not be used on chilled or cold water systems. Materials shall be asbestos free. Provide product recognized under UL 94 (if containing plastic) and listed in FM APP GUIDE.

2.2.1 Adhesives

Provide non-aerosol adhesive products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) that meet either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of SCAQMD Rule 1168 (HVAC duct sealants must meet limit requirements of "Other" category within SCAQMD Rule 1168 sealants table).

Provide aerosol adhesives used on the interior of the building that meet either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (use the office or classroom requirements, regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of GS-36. Provide certification or validation of indoor air quality for adhesives.

2.2.1.1 Acoustical Lining Insulation Adhesive

Adhesive shall be a nonflammable, fire-resistant adhesive conforming to ASTM C916, Type I.

2.2.1.2 Mineral Fiber Insulation Cement Cement shall be

in accordance with ASTM C195.

2.2.1.3 Lagging Adhesive

Lagging is the material used for thermal insulation, especially around a cylindrical object. This may include the insulation as well as the cloth/material covering the insulation. [To resist mold/mildew, lagging adhesive shall meet ASTM D5590 with 0 growth rating.] Lagging adhesives shall be nonflammable and fire-resistant and shall have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84. Adhesive shall be MIL-A-3316, Class 1, pigmented white and be suitable for bonding fibrous glass cloth to faced and unfaced fibrous glass insulation board; for bonding cotton brattice cloth to faced and unfaced fibrous glass insulation board; for sealing edges of and bonding glass tape to joints of fibrous glass board; for bonding lagging cloth to thermal insulation; or Class 2 for attaching fibrous glass insulation to metal surfaces. Lagging adhesives shall be applied in strict accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations for pipe and duct insulation.

2.2.1.4 Contact Adhesive

Adhesives may be any of, but not limited to, the neoprene based, rubber based, or elastomeric type that have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84. The adhesive shall not adversely affect, initially or in service, the insulation to which it is applied, nor shall it cause any corrosive effect on metal to which it is applied. Any solvent dispersing medium or volatile component of the adhesive shall have no objectionable odor and shall not contain any benzene or carbon tetrachloride. The dried adhesive shall not emit nauseous, irritating, or toxic volatile matters or aerosols when the adhesive is heated to any temperature up to 212 degrees F. The dried adhesive shall be nonflammable and fire resistant. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179, Type II, Class I. Provide product listed in FM APP GUIDE.

2.2.2 Caulking

ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use A.

2.2.3 Corner Angles

Nominal 0.016 inch aluminum 1 by 1 inch with factory applied kraft backing. Aluminum

shall be ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3105, or 5005.

2.2.4 Fittings

Fabricated Fittings are the prefabricated fittings for flexible elastomeric pipe insulation systems in accordance with ASTM C1710. Together with the flexible elastomeric tubes, they provide complete system integrity for retarding heat gain and controlling condensation drip from chilled-water and refrigeration systems. Flexible elastomeric, fabricated fittings provide thermal protection (0.25 k) and condensation resistance (0.05 Water Vapor Transmission factor). For satisfactory performance, properly installed protective vapor retarder/barriers and vapor stops shall be used on high relative humidity and below ambient temperature applications to reduce movement of moisture through or around the insulation to the colder interior surface.

2.2.5 Finishing Cement

ASTM C450: Mineral fiber hydraulic-setting thermal insulating and finishing cement. All cements that may come in contact with Austenitic stainless steel must comply with ASTM C795.

2.2.6 Fibrous Glass Cloth and Glass Tape

Fibrous glass cloth, with 20X20 maximum mesh size, and glass tape shall have maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84. Tape shall be 4 inch wide rolls. Class 3 tape shall be 4.5 ounces/square yard.
Elastomeric Foam Tape: Black vapor-retarder foam tape with acrylic adhesive containing an anti-microbial additive.

2.2.7 Staples

Outward clinching type [monel] [ASTM A167, Type 304 or 316 stainless steel].

2.2.8 Jackets

2.2.8.1 Aluminum Jackets

Aluminum jackets shall be corrugated, embossed or smooth sheet, 0.016 inch nominal thickness; ASTM B209, Temper H14, Temper H16, Alloy 3003, 5005, or 3105. Corrugated aluminum jacket shall not be used outdoors. Aluminum jacket securing bands shall be Type 304 stainless steel, 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide for pipe under 12 inch diameter and 3/4 inch wide for pipe over 12 inch and larger diameter. Aluminum jacket circumferential seam bands shall be 2 by 0.016 inch aluminum matching jacket material. Bands for insulation below ground shall be 3/4 by 0.020 inch thick stainless steel, or fiberglass reinforced tape. The jacket may, at the option of the Contractor, be provided with a factory fabricated Pittsburgh or "Z" type longitudinal joint. When the "Z" joint is used, the bands at the circumferential joints shall be designed by the manufacturer to seal the joints and hold the jacket in place.

2.2.8.2 Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Jackets

Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) jacket and fitting covers shall have high impact strength, ultraviolet (UV) resistant rating or treatment and moderate chemical resistance with minimum thickness 0.030 inch.

2.2.8.3 Vapor Barrier/Weatherproofing Jacket

Vapor barrier/weatherproofing jacket shall be laminated self-adhesive, greater than 3 plies standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed or greater than 8 ply (minimum 2.9 mils adhesive); with 0.0000 permeability when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M, using the water transmission rate test method; heavy duty, white or natural; and UV resistant. Flexible Elastomeric exterior foam with factory applied, UV Jacket made with a cold weather acrylic adhesive. Construction of laminate designed to provide UV resistance, high puncture, tear resistance and excellent Water Vapor Transmission (WVT) rate.

2.2.8.4 Vapor Barrier/Vapor Retarder

Apply the following criteria to determine which system is required.

- a. On ducts, piping and equipment operating below 55 degrees F or located outside shall be equipped with a vapor barrier.
- b. Ducts, pipes and equipment that are located inside and that always operate above 55 degrees F shall be installed with a vapor retarder where required as stated in paragraph VAPOR RETARDER REQUIRED.

2.2.9 Vapor Retarder Required

ASTM C921, Type I, minimum puncture resistance 50 Beach units on all surfaces where a minimum puncture resistance of 25 Beach units is acceptable. Minimum tensile strength, 35 pounds/inch width. ASTM C921, Type II, minimum puncture resistance 25 Beach units, tensile strength minimum 20 pounds/inch width. Jackets used on insulation exposed in finished areas shall have white finish suitable for painting without sizing. Based on the application, insulation materials that require manufacturer or fabricator applied pipe insulation jackets are cellular glass, when all joints are sealed with a vapor barrier mastic, and mineral fiber. All non-metallic jackets shall have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84. Flexible elastomerics require (in addition to vapor barrier skin) vapor retarder jacketing for high relative humidity and below ambient temperature applications.

2.2.9.1 White Vapor Retarder All Service Jacket (ASJ)

ASJ is for use on hot/cold pipes, ducts, or equipment indoors or outdoors if covered by a suitable protective jacket. The product shall meet all physical property and performance requirements of ASTM C1136, Type I, except the burst strength shall be a minimum of 85 psi. ASTM D2863 Limited Oxygen Index (LOI) shall be a minimum of 31.

In addition, neither the outer exposed surface nor the inner-most surface contacting the insulation shall be paper or other moisture-sensitive material. The outer exposed surface shall be white and have an emittance of not less than 0.80. The outer exposed surface shall be paintable.

2.2.9.2 Vapor Retarder/Vapor Barrier Mastic Coatings

2.2.9.2.1 Vapor Barrier

The vapor barrier shall be self adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) greater than 3 plies standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed white jacket for use on hot/cold pipes. Permeability shall be less than 0.02 when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M. Products shall meet UL 723 or ASTM E84 flame and smoke requirements and shall be UV resistant.

Vapor Retarder

The vapor retarder coating shall be fire and water resistant and appropriately selected for either outdoor or indoor service. Color shall be white. The water vapor permeance of the compound shall be in accordance with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation type and service conditions. The coating shall be nonflammable, fire resistant type. [To resist mold/mildew, coating shall meet ASTM D5590 with 0 growth rating.]Coating shall meet MIL-PRF-19565 Type II (if selected for indoor service) and be Qualified Products Database listed. All other application and service properties shall be determined pursuant to ASTM C647.

2.2.9.3 Laminated Film Vapor Retarder

ASTM C1136, Type I, maximum moisture vapor transmission 0.02 perms, minimum puncture resistance 50 Beach units on all surfaces except concealed ductwork; where Type II, maximum

moisture vapor transmission 0.02 perms, a minimum puncture resistance of 25 Beach units is acceptable. Vapor retarder shall have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84. Flexible Elastomeric exterior foam with factory applied UV Jacket. Construction of laminate designed to provide UV resistance, high puncture, tear resistance and an excellent WVT rate.

2.2.9.4 Polyvinylidene Chloride (PVDC) Film Vapor Retarder

The PVDC film vapor retarder shall have a maximum moisture vapor transmission of 0.02 perms, minimum puncture resistance of 150 Beach units, a minimum tensile strength in any direction of 30 lb/inch when tested in accordance with ASTM D882, and a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

2.2.9.5 Polyvinylidene Chloride Vapor Retarder Adhesive Tape

Requirements must meet the same as specified for Laminated Film Vapor Retarder above.

2.2.9.6 Vapor Barrier/Weather Barrier

The vapor barrier shall be greater than 3 ply self adhesive laminate -white vapor barrier jacket- superior performance (less than 0.0000 permeability when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M). Vapor barrier shall meet UL 723 or ASTM E84 25 flame and 50 smoke requirements; and UV resistant. Minimum burst strength 185 psi in accordance with [TAPPI T403 OM] [ISO 2758]. Tensile strength 68 lb/inch width (PSTC-1000). Tape shall be as specified for laminated film vapor barrier above.

2.2.10 Vapor Retarder Not Required

ASTM C921, Type II, Class D, minimum puncture resistance 50 Beach units on all surfaces except ductwork, where Type IV, maximum moisture vapor transmission 0.10, a minimum puncture resistance of 25 Beach units is acceptable. Jacket shall have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

2.2.11 Wire

Soft annealed ASTM A580/A580M Type 302, 304 or 316 stainless steel, 16 or 18 gauge.

2.2.12 Insulation Bands

Insulation bands shall be 1/2 inch wide; 26 gauge stainless steel.

2.2.13 Sealants

Sealants shall be chosen from the butyl polymer type, the styrene-butadiene rubber type, or the butyl type of sealants. Sealants shall have a maximum permeance of 0.02 perms based on Procedure B for ASTM E96/E96M, and a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

2.3 PIPE INSULATION SYSTEMS

Conform insulation materials to Table 1 and minimum insulation thickness as listed in Table 2 and meet or exceed the requirements of [ASHRAE 90.1 - SI][ASHRAE 90.2]. Limit pipe insulation materials to those listed herein and meeting the following requirements:

2.3.1 Recycled Materials

Provide insulation materials containing the following minimum percentage of recycled material content by weight:

Rock Wool: 75 percent slag of weight Fiberglass:
20 percent glass cullet Rigid Foam:
9 percent recovered material
Phenolic Rigid Foam: 9 percent recovered material

Provide data identifying percentage of recycled content for insulation materials.

2.3.2 Aboveground Cold Pipeline (-30 to 60 deg. F)

Insulation for outdoor, indoor, exposed or concealed applications, shall be as follows:

2.3.2.1 Cellular Glass

ASTM C552, Type II, and Type III. Supply the insulation from the fabricator with (paragraph WHITE VAPOR RETARDER ALL SERVICE JACKET (ASJ)) ASJ vapor retarder and installed with all longitudinal overlaps sealed and all circumferential joints ASJ taped or supply the insulation unfaced from the fabricator and install with all longitudinal and circumferential joints sealed with vapor barrier mastic.

2.3.2.2 Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Insulation

Closed-cell, foam- or expanded-rubber materials containing anti-microbial additive, complying with ASTM C534/C534M, Grade 1, Type I or II. Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials. Type II, Grade 1, for sheet materials. Type I and II shall have vapor retarder/vapor barrier skin on one or both sides of the insulation, and require an additional exterior vapor retarder covering for high relative humidity and below ambient temperature applications.

2.3.3 Aboveground Hot Pipeline (Above 60 deg. F)

Insulation for outdoor, indoor, exposed or concealed applications shall meet the following requirements. Supply the insulation with manufacturer's recommended factory-applied jacket/vapor barrier.

2.3.3.1 Mineral Fiber

ASTM C547, Types I, II or III, supply the insulation with manufacturer's recommended factory-applied jacket.

2.3.3.2 Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Insulation

Closed-cell, foam- or expanded-rubber materials containing anti-microbial additive, complying with ASTM C534/C534M, Grade 1, Type I or II to 220 degrees F service. Type I for tubular materials. Type II for sheet materials.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION - GENERAL

Apply insulation to unheated and uncooled piping and equipment. Do not compress flexible elastomeric cellular insulation at joists, studs, columns, ducts, and hangers. The insulation must not pull apart after a one hour period; replace any insulation found to pull apart after one hour.

3.1.1 Display Samples

Submit and display, after approval of materials, actual sections of installed systems, properly insulated in accordance with the specification requirements. Such actual sections must remain accessible to inspection throughout the job and will be reviewed from time to time for controlling the quality of the work throughout the construction site. Each material used shall be identified, by indicating on an attached sheet the specification requirement for the material and the material by

each manufacturer intended to meet the requirement. The Contracting Officer will inspect display sample sections at the jobsite. Approved display sample sections shall remain on display at the jobsite during the construction period. Upon completion of construction, the display sample sections will be closed and sealed.

3.1.1.1 Pipe Insulation Display Sections

Display sample sections shall include as a minimum an elbow or tee, a valve, dielectric waterways and flanges, a hanger with protection shield and insulation insert, or dowel as required, at support point, method of fastening and sealing insulation at longitudinal lap, circumferential lap, butt joints at fittings and on pipe runs, and terminating points for each type of pipe insulation used on the job, and for hot pipelines and cold pipelines, both interior and exterior, even when the same type of insulation is used for these services.

3.1.1.2 Duct Insulation Display Sections

Display sample sections for rigid and flexible duct insulation used on the job. Use a temporary covering to enclose and protect display sections for duct insulation exposed to weather

3.1.2 Installation

Except as otherwise specified, material shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions. Insulation materials shall not be applied until [tests] [tests and heat tracing] specified in other sections of this specification are completed. Material such as rust, scale, dirt and moisture shall be removed from surfaces to receive insulation. Insulation shall be kept clean and dry. Insulation shall not be removed from its shipping containers until the day it is ready to use and shall be returned to like containers or equally protected from dirt and moisture at the end of each workday. Insulation that becomes dirty shall be thoroughly cleaned prior to use. If insulation becomes wet or if cleaning does not restore the surfaces to like new condition, the insulation will be rejected, and shall be immediately removed from the jobsite. Joints shall be staggered on multi layer insulation. Mineral fiber thermal insulating cement shall be mixed with demineralized water when used on stainless steel surfaces. Insulation, jacketing and accessories shall be installed in accordance with MICA Insulation Stds plates except where modified herein or on the drawings.

3.1.3 Firestopping

Where pipes and pass through fire walls, fire partitions, above grade floors, and fire rated chase walls, the penetration shall be sealed with fire stopping materials as specified in Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING. The protection of ducts at point of passage through firewalls must be in accordance with NFPA 90A and/or NFPA 90B. All other penetrations, such as piping, conduit, and wiring, through firewalls must be protected with a material or system of the same hourly rating that is listed by UL, FM, or a NRTL.

3.1.4 Painting and Finishing

Painting shall be as specified in Section 09 91 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

3.1.5 Installation of Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Insulation

Install flexible elastomeric cellular

insulation with seams and joints sealed with rubberized contact adhesive. Flexible elastomeric cellular insulation shall not be used on surfaces greater than 220 degrees F. Stagger seams when applying multiple layers of insulation. Protect insulation exposed to weather and not shown to have vapor barrier weatherproof jacketing with two coats of UV resistant finish or PVC or metal jacketing as recommended by the manufacturer after the adhesive is dry and cured.

3.1.5.1 Adhesive Application

Apply a brush coating of adhesive to both butt ends to be joined and to both slit surfaces to be sealed. Allow the adhesive to set until dry to touch but tacky under slight pressure before joining

the surfaces. Insulation seals at seams and joints shall not be capable of being pulled apart one hour after application. Insulation that can be pulled apart one hour after installation shall be replaced.

Adhesive Safety Precautions

Use natural cross-ventilation, local (mechanical) pickup, and/or general area (mechanical) ventilation to prevent an accumulation of solvent vapors, keeping in mind the ventilation pattern must remove any heavier-than-air solvent vapors from lower levels of the workspaces. Gloves and spectacle-type safety glasses are recommended in accordance with safe installation practices.

3.1.6 Welding

No welding shall be done on piping, or without written approval of the Contracting Officer.

3.1.7 Pipes/ That Require Insulation

Insulation is required on all pipes, or except for omitted items as specified.

3.2 PIPE INSULATION SYSTEMS INSTALLATION

3.2.1 Pipe Insulation

3.2.1.1 General

Pipe insulation shall be installed on aboveground hot and cold pipeline systems as specified below to form a continuous thermal retarder/barrier, including straight runs, fittings and appurtenances unless specified otherwise. Installation shall be with full length units of insulation and using a single cut piece to complete a run. Cut pieces or scraps abutting each other shall not be used. Pipe insulation shall be omitted on the following:

- a. Pipe used solely for fire protection.
- b. Chromium plated pipe to plumbing fixtures. However, fixtures for use by the physically handicapped shall have the hot water supply and drain, including the trap, insulated where exposed.
- c. Sanitary drain lines.
- d. Air chambers.
- e. Adjacent insulation.
- f. ASME stamps.
- g. Access plates of fan housings.
- h. Cleanouts or handholes.

3.2.1.2 Pipes Passing Through Walls, Roofs, and Floors Pipe insulation shall be continuous through the sleeve.

Provide an aluminum jacket or vapor barrier/weatherproofing self adhesive jacket (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) less than 0.0000 permeability, greater than 3 ply standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed with factory applied moisture retarder over the insulation wherever penetrations require sealing.

3.2.1.2.1 Penetrate Interior Walls

The aluminum jacket or vapor barrier/weatherproofing - self adhesive jacket (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) less than 0.0000 permeability, greater than 3 plies standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed shall extend 2 inches beyond either side of the wall and shall be secured on each end with a band.

3.2.1.2.2 Penetrating Floors

Extend the aluminum jacket from a point below the backup material to a point 10 inches above the floor with one band at the floor and one not more than 1 inch from the end of the aluminum jacket.

3.2.1.2.3 Penetrating Waterproofed Floors

Extend the aluminum jacket from below the backup material to a point 2 inches above the flashing with a band 1 inch from the end of the aluminum jacket.

3.2.1.2.4 Penetrating Exterior Walls

Continue the aluminum jacket required for pipe exposed to weather through the sleeve to a point 2 inches beyond the interior surface of the wall.

3.2.1.2.5 Penetrating Roofs

Insulate pipe as required for interior service to a point flush with the top of the flashing and sealed with flashing sealant. Tightly butt the insulation for exterior application to the top of flashing and interior insulation. Extend the exterior aluminum jacket 2 inches down beyond the end of the insulation to form a counter flashing. Seal the flashing and counter flashing underneath with metal jacketing/flashing sealant.

3.2.1.2.6 Hot Water Pipes Supplying Lavatories or Other Similar Heated Service

Terminate the insulation on the backside of the finished wall. Protect the insulation termination with two coats of vapor barrier coating with a minimum total thickness of 1/16 inch applied with glass tape embedded between coats (if applicable). Extend the coating out onto the insulation 2 inches and seal the end of the insulation. Overlap glass tape seams 1 inch. Caulk the annular space between the pipe and wall penetration with approved fire stop material. Cover the pipe and wall penetration with a properly sized (well fitting) escutcheon plate. The escutcheon plate shall overlap the wall penetration at least 3/8 inches.

3.2.1.2.7 Domestic Cold Water Pipes Supplying Lavatories or Other Similar Cooling Service

Terminate the insulation on the finished side of the wall (i.e., insulation must cover the pipe throughout the wall penetration). Protect the insulation with two coats of weather barrier mastic (breather emulsion type weatherproof mastic impermeable to water and permeable to air) with a minimum total thickness of 1/16 inch. Extend the mastic out onto the insulation 2 inches and shall seal the end of the insulation. The annular space between the outer surface of the pipe insulation and caulk the wall penetration with an approved fire stop material having vapor retarder properties. Cover the pipe and wall penetration with a properly sized (well fitting) escutcheon plate. The escutcheon plate shall overlap the wall penetration by at least 3/8 inches.

3.2.1.3 Pipes Passing Through Hangers

Insulation, whether hot or cold application, shall be continuous through hangers. All horizontal pipes 2 inches and smaller shall be supported on hangers with the addition of a Type 40 protection shield to protect the insulation in accordance with MSS SP-58. Whenever insulation shows signs of being compressed, or when the insulation or jacket shows visible signs of distortion at or near the

support shield, insulation inserts as specified below for piping larger than 2 inches shall be installed, or factory insulated hangers (designed with a load bearing core) can be used.

3.2.1.3.1 Horizontal Pipes Larger Than 2 Inches at 60 Degrees F and Above

Supported on hangers in accordance with MSS SP-58, and Section 22 00 00 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE.

3.2.1.3.2 Horizontal Pipes Larger Than 2 Inches and Below 60 Degrees F

Supported on hangers with the addition of a Type 40 protection shield in accordance with MSS SP-58. An insulation insert of cellular glass, prefabricated insulation pipe hangers, or perlite above 80 degrees F shall be installed above each shield. The insert shall cover not less than the bottom 180-degree arc of the pipe. Inserts shall be the same thickness as the insulation, and shall extend 2 inches on each end beyond the protection shield. When insulation inserts are required in accordance with the above, and the insulation thickness is less than 1 inch, wooden or cork dowels or blocks may be installed between the pipe and the shield to prevent the weight of the pipe from crushing the insulation, as an option to installing insulation inserts. The insulation jacket shall be continuous over the wooden dowel, wooden block, or insulation insert.

3.2.1.3.3 Vertical Pipes

Supported with either Type 8 or Type 42 riser clamps with the addition of two Type 40 protection shields in accordance with MSS SP-58 covering the 360-degree arc of the insulation. An insulation insert of cellular glass or calcium silicate shall be installed between each shield and the pipe. The insert shall cover the 360-degree arc of the pipe. Inserts shall be the same thickness as the insulation, and shall extend 2 inches on each end beyond the protection shield. When insulation inserts are required in accordance with the above, and the insulation thickness is less than 1 inch, wooden or cork dowels or blocks may be installed between the pipe and the shield to prevent the hanger from crushing the insulation, as an option instead of installing insulation inserts. The insulation jacket shall be continuous over the wooden dowel, wooden block, or insulation insert. The vertical weight of the pipe shall be supported with hangers located in a horizontal section of the pipe. When the pipe riser is longer than 30 feet, the weight of the pipe shall be additionally supported with hangers in the vertical run of the pipe that are directly clamped to the pipe, penetrating the pipe insulation. These hangers shall be insulated and the insulation jacket sealed as indicated herein for anchors in a similar service.

3.2.1.3.4 Inserts

Covered with a jacket material of the same appearance and quality as the adjoining pipe insulation jacket, overlap the adjoining pipe jacket 1-1/2 inches, and seal as required for the pipe jacket. The jacket material used to cover inserts in flexible elastomeric cellular insulation shall conform to ASTM C1136, Type 1, and is allowed to be of a different material than the adjoining insulation material.

3.2.1.4 Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Pipe Insulation

Flexible elastomeric cellular pipe insulation shall be tubular form for pipe sizes 6 inches and less. Grade 1, Type II sheet insulation used on pipes larger than 6 inches shall not be stretched around the pipe. On pipes larger than 12 inches, the insulation shall be adhered directly to the pipe on the lower 1/3 of the pipe. Seams shall be staggered when applying multiple layers of insulation. Sweat fittings shall be insulated with miter-cut pieces the same size as on adjacent piping. Screwed fittings shall be insulated with sleeved fitting covers fabricated from miter-cut pieces and shall be overlapped and sealed to the adjacent pipe insulation. Type II requires an additional exterior vapor retarder/barrier covering for high relative humidity and below ambient temperature applications.

3.2.1.5 Pipe Insulation Material and Thickness

Pipe insulation materials must be as listed in Table 1 and must meet or exceed the requirements of ASHRAE 90.2.

Material	Specification	Type	Class	VR/VB Req'd
Cellular Glass	ASTM C552	II	2	Yes
Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	AST C534/C534M M	I		Yes
Mineral Fiber	AST C547 M	I	1	No
Cellular Glass	AST C552	II	2	No
Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	AST C534/C534M M	I	2	No
Cellular Glass	ASTM C552	II	2	No
Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	AST C534/C534M M	I		No

Material	Specification	Type	Class	VR/VB Req'd
Mineral Fiber	AST C547 M	I	1	No
Cellular Glass	AST C552 M	II	2	No
Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	AST C534/C534M M	I		No
Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	ASTM C534/C534M	I		No
Cellular Glass	AST C552 M	II	1	Yes
Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	ASTM C534/C534M	I		No
Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	ASTM C534/C534M	I		No

TABLE 2						
Piping Insulation Thickness (inch)						
Do not use integral wicking material in Chilled water applications exposed to outdoor ambient conditions in climatic zones 1 through 4.						
Service						
Material	Tube And Pipe Size (inch)					
	<1	1-<1.5	1.5-<4	4-<8	> or = >8	
Chilled Water (Supply & Return, Piping, 40 Degrees F nominal)						
Cellular Glass	1.5	2	2	2.5	3	
Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	1	1	1	N/A	N/A	
Heating Hot Water Supply & Return, Heated Oil (Max 250 F)						

TABLE 2						
Piping Insulation Thickness (inch) Do not use integral wicking material in Chilled water applications exposed to outdoor ambient conditions in climatic zones 1 through 4.						
Service						
	Material	Tube And Pipe Size (inch)				
		<1	1-<1.5	1.5-<4	4-<8	> or = >8
	Mineral Fiber	1.5	1.5	2	2	2
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	1	1	1	N/A	N/A
Cold Domestic Water Piping, Makeup Water & Drinking Fountain Drain Piping						
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	1	1	1	N/A	N/A
Hot Domestic Water Supply & Recirculating Piping (Max 200 F)						
	Mineral Fiber	1	1	1	1.5	1.5
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	1	1	1	N/A	N/A
Exposed Lavatory Drains, Exposed Domestic Water Piping & Drains to Areas for Handicapped Personnel						
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5
Condensate Drain Located Inside Building						
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	1	1	1	N/A	N/A

3.2.2 Aboveground Cold Pipelines

The following cold pipelines for minus 30 to plus 60 degrees F, shall be insulated in accordance with Table 2 except those piping listed in subparagraph Pipe Insulation in PART 3 as to be omitted.

This includes but is

not limited to the following:

- a. fixtures for handicap persons.
- b. Chilled water.
- c. Exposed lavatory drains and domestic water lines serving plumbing

3.2.2.1 Insulation Material and Thickness

3.2.2.2 Factory or Field applied Jacket

Insulation shall be covered with a factory applied vapor retarder jacket/vapor barrier or [field applied] seal welded PVC jacket or greater than 3 ply laminated self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) vapor barrier/weatherproofing jacket - less than 0.0000 permeability, standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed for use with Mineral Fiber, Cellular Glass, and Phenolic Foam Insulated Pipe. Insulation inside the building, to be protected with an aluminum jacket or greater than 3ply vapor barrier/weatherproofing self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) product, less than 0.0000 permeability, standard grade, Embossed Silver, White & Black, shall have the insulation and vapor retarder jacket installed as specified herein. The aluminum jacket or greater than 3ply vapor barrier/weatherproofing self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) product, less than 0.0000 permeability, standard grade, embossed silver, White & Black, shall be installed as specified for piping exposed to weather, except sealing of the laps of the aluminum jacket is not required. In high abuse areas such as janitor closets and traffic areas in equipment rooms, kitchens, and mechanical rooms, aluminum jackets or greater than 3ply vapor barrier/weatherproofing self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) product, less than 0.0000 permeability, standard grade, embossed silver, white & black, shall be provided for pipe insulation to the 6 ft level.

3.2.2.3 Installing Insulation for Straight Runs Hot and Cold Pipe Apply insulation to the pipe with tight butt joints. Seal all butted joints and ends with joint sealant and seal with a vapor retarder coating, greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape or PVDC adhesive tape.

3.2.2.3.1 Longitudinal Laps of the Jacket Material

Overlap not less than 1-1/2 inches. Provide butt strips 3 inches wide for circumferential joints.

3.2.2.3.2 Laps and Butt Strips

Secure with adhesive and staple on 4 inch centers if not factory self-sealing. If staples are used, seal in accordance with paragraph STAPLES below. Note that staples are not required with cellular glass systems.

3.2.2.3.3 Factory Self-Sealing Lap Systems

May be used when the ambient temperature is between 40 and 120 degrees F during installation. Install the lap system in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Use a stapler only if specifically recommended by the manufacturer. Where gaps occur, replace the section or repair the gap by applying adhesive under the lap and then stapling.

3.2.2.3.4 Staples

Coat all staples, including those used to repair factory self-seal lap systems, with a vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape or greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - 0.0000 perm adhesive tape. Coat all seams, except those on factory self-seal systems, with vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape or greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape.

3.2.2.3.5 Breaks and Punctures in the Jacket Material

Patch by wrapping a strip of jacket material around the pipe and secure it with adhesive, staple, and coat with vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape or greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape. Extend the patch not less than 1-1/2 inches past the break.

3.2.2.3.6 Penetrations Such as Thermometers

Fill the voids in the insulation and seal with vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape or greater

than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape.

3.2.2.3.7 Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Pipe Insulation

Install by slitting the tubular sections and applying them onto the piping or tubing. Alternately, whenever possible slide un-slit sections over the open ends of piping or tubing. Secure all seams and butt joints and seal with adhesive. When using self seal products only the butt joints shall be secured with adhesive. Push insulation on the pipe, never pulled. Stretching of insulation may result in open seams and joints. Clean cut all edges. Rough or jagged edges of the insulation are not be permitted. Use proper tools such as sharp knives. Do not stretch Grade 1, Type II sheet insulation around the pipe when used on pipe larger than 6 inches. On pipes larger than 12 inches, adhere sheet insulation directly to the pipe on the lower 1/3 of the pipe.

3.2.2.4 Insulation for Fittings and Accessories

- a. Pipe insulation shall be tightly butted to the insulation of the fittings and accessories. The butted joints and ends shall be sealed with joint sealant and sealed with a vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape or greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape.
- b. Precut or preformed insulation shall be placed around all fittings and accessories and shall conform to MICA plates except as modified herein: 5 for anchors; 10, 11, and 13 for fittings; 14 for valves; and 17 for flanges and unions. Insulation shall be the same insulation as the pipe insulation, including same density, thickness, and thermal conductivity. Where recut/preformed is unavailable, rigid preformed pipe insulation sections may be segmented into the shape required. Insulation of the same thickness and conductivity as the adjoining pipe insulation shall be used. If nesting size insulation is used, the insulation shall be overlapped 2 inches or one pipe diameter. Elbows insulated using segments shall conform to MICA Tables 12.20 "Mitered Insulation Elbow". Submit a booklet containing completed MICA Insulation Stds plates detailing each insulating system for each pipe, insulating system, after approval of materials and prior to applying insulation.
 - (1) The MICA plates shall detail the materials to be installed and the specific insulation application. Submit all MICA plates required showing the entire insulating system, including plates required to show insulation penetrations, vessel bottom and top heads, legs, and skirt insulation as applicable. The MICA plates shall present all variations of insulation systems including locations, materials, vapor proofing, jackets and insulation accessories.
 - (2) If the Contractor elects to submit detailed drawings instead of edited MICA Plates, the detail drawings shall be technically equivalent to the edited MICA Plate submittal.
- c. Upon completion of insulation installation on flanges, unions, valves, anchors, fittings and accessories, terminations, seams, joints and insulation not protected by factory vapor retarder jackets or PVC fitting covers shall be protected with PVDC or greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape or two coats of vapor retarder coating with a minimum total thickness of 1/16 inch, applied with glass tape embedded between coats. Tape seams shall overlap 1 inch. The coating shall extend out onto the adjoining pipe insulation 2 inches. Fabricated insulation with a factory vapor retarder jacket shall be protected with either greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape, standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed or PVDC adhesive tape or two coats of vapor retarder coating with a minimum thickness of 1/16 inch and with a 2 inch wide glass tape embedded between coats. Where fitting insulation butts to pipe insulation, the joints shall be sealed with a vapor retarder coating and a 4 inch wide ASJ tape which matches the jacket of the pipe insulation.
- d. Anchors attached directly to the pipe shall be insulated for a sufficient distance to prevent condensation but not less than 6 inches from the insulation surface.

- e. Insulation shall be marked showing the location of unions, strainers, and check valves.

3.2.2.5 Optional PVC Fitting Covers

At the option of the Contractor, premolded, one or two piece PVC fitting covers may be used in lieu of the vapor retarder and embedded glass tape. Factory precut or premolded insulation segments shall be used under the fitting covers for elbows. Insulation segments shall be the same insulation as the pipe insulation including same density, thickness, and thermal conductivity. The covers shall be secured by PVC vapor retarder tape, adhesive, seal welding or with tacks made for securing PVC covers. Seams in the cover, and tacks and laps to adjoining pipe insulation jacket, shall be sealed with vapor retarder tape to ensure that the assembly has a continuous vapor seal.

3.2.3 Aboveground Hot Pipelines

3.2.3.1 General Requirements

All hot pipe lines above 60 degrees F, except those piping listed in subparagraph Pipe Insulation in PART 3 as to be omitted, shall be insulated in accordance with Table 2. This includes but is not limited to the following:

Insulation shall be covered, in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations, with a factory applied Type I jacket or field applied aluminum where required or seal welded PVC.

Insulation for Fittings and Accessories

Pipe insulation shall be tightly butted to the insulation of the fittings and accessories. The butted joints and ends shall be sealed with joint sealant. Insulation shall be marked showing the location of unions, strainers, check valves and other components that would otherwise be hidden from view by the insulation.

3.2.3.1.1 Precut or Preformed

Place precut or preformed insulation around all fittings and accessories. Insulation shall be the same insulation as the pipe insulation, including same density, thickness, and thermal conductivity.

3.2.3.1.2 Rigid Preformed

Where precut/preformed is unavailable, rigid preformed pipe insulation sections may be segmented into the shape required. Insulation of the same thickness and conductivity as the adjoining pipe insulation shall be used. If nesting size insulation is used, the insulation shall be overlapped 2 inches or one pipe diameter. Elbows insulated using segments shall conform to MICA Tables 12.20 "Mitered Insulation Elbow".

3.2.4 Piping Exposed to Weather

Piping exposed to weather shall be insulated and jacketed as specified for the applicable service inside the building. After this procedure, a laminated self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) vapor barrier/weatherproofing jacket - less than 0.0000 permeability (greater than 3 ply, standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed aluminum jacket, stainless steel or PVC jacket shall be applied.

PVC jacketing requires no factory-applied jacket beneath it, however an all service jacket shall be applied if factory applied jacketing is not furnished. Flexible elastomeric cellular insulation exposed to weather shall be treated in accordance with paragraph INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC CELLULAR INSULATION in PART 3.

3.2.4.1 Aluminum Jacket

The jacket for hot piping may be factory applied. The jacket shall overlap not less than 2 inches at longitudinal and circumferential joints and shall be secured with bands at not more than 12 inch centers. Longitudinal joints shall be overlapped down to shed water and located at 4 or 8 o'clock positions. Joints on piping 60 degrees F and below shall be sealed with metal jacketing/flushing sealant while overlapping to prevent moisture penetration. Where jacketing on piping 60 degrees F and below abuts an un-insulated surface, joints shall be caulked to prevent moisture penetration. Joints on piping above 60 degrees F shall be sealed with a moisture retarder.

3.2.4.2 Insulation for Fittings

Flanges, unions, valves, fittings, and accessories shall be insulated and finished as specified for the applicable service. Two coats of breather emulsion type weatherproof mastic (impermeable to water, permeable to air) recommended by the insulation manufacturer shall be applied with glass tape embedded between coats. Tape overlaps shall be not less than 1 inch and the adjoining aluminum jacket not less than 2 inches. Factory preformed aluminum jackets may be used in lieu of the above. Molded PVC fitting covers shall be provided when PVC jackets are used for straight runs of pipe. PVC fitting covers shall have adhesive welded joints and shall be weatherproof laminated self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) vapor barrier/weatherproofing jacket - less than 0.0000 permeability, (greater than 3 ply, standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed, and UV resistant).

3.2.4.3 PVC Jacket

PVC jacket shall be ultraviolet resistant and adhesive welded weather tight with manufacturer's recommended adhesive. Installation shall include provision for thermal expansion.

3.2.4.4

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 09 00
INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR
HVAC
02/19, CHG 3: 05/21

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

Provide a complete Direct Digital Control (DDC) system, except for the Front End which is specified in Section 25 10 10 UTILITY MONITORING AND CONTROL (UMCS) FRONT END AND INTEGRATION, suitable for the control of the heating, ventilating and air conditioning (HVAC) and other building-level systems as indicated and shown and in accordance with Section 23 09 13 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC, Section 23 09 93 SEQUENCES OF OPERATION FOR HVAC CONTROL, Section 23 09 23.02 BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS for BACnet or Niagara

1.1.1 System Requirements referenced Sections.

Provide systems meeting the requirements this Section and other Sections referenced by this Section, and which have the following characteristics:

- a. The system implements the control sequences of operation shown in the Contract Drawings using DDC hardware to control mechanical and electrical equipment
- b. The system meet the requirements of this specification as a stand-alone system and does not require connection to any other system.
- c. Control sequences reside in DDC hardware in the building. The building control network is not dependent upon connection to a Utility Monitoring and Control System (UMCS) Front End or to any other system for performance of control sequences. To the greatest extent practical, the hardware performs control sequences without reliance on the building network, unless otherwise pre-approved by the Contracting Officer.
- d. The hardware is installed such that individual control equipment can be replaced by similar control equipment from other equipment manufacturers with no loss of system functionality.
- e. All necessary documentation, configuration information, programming tools, programs, drivers, and other software are licensed to and otherwise remain with the Government such that the Government or their agents are able to perform repair, replacement, upgrades, and expansions of the system without subsequent or future dependence on the Contractor, Vendor or Manufacturer.
- f. Sufficient documentation and data, including rights to documentation and data, are provided such that the Government or their agents can execute work to perform repair, replacement, upgrades, and expansions of the system without subsequent or future dependence on the Contractor, Vendor or Manufacturer.

- g. Hardware is installed and configured such that the Government or their agents are able to perform repair, replacement, and upgrades of individual hardware without further interaction with the Contractor,
- 1.1.2 End to End Accuracy

Select products, install and configure the system such that the maximum error of a measured value as read from the DDC Hardware over the network is less than the maximum allowable error specified for the sensor or instrumentation.

1.1.3 Verification of Dimensions

After becoming familiar with all details of the work, verify all dimensions in the field, and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing any work.

1.1.4 Drawings

The Government will not indicate all offsets, fittings, and accessories that may be required on the drawings. Carefully investigate the mechanical, electrical, and finish conditions that could affect the work to be performed, arrange such work accordingly, and provide all work necessary to meet such conditions.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

Related work specified elsewhere:

- a. Section 23 09 23.02 BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS for BACnet systems with or without Niagara Framework.
 - b. Section 23 09 13 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC
 - e. Section 25 10 10 UTILITY MONITORING AND CONTROL SYSTEMS (UMCS) FRONT END AND INTEGRATION
 - f. Section 25 05 11 CYBERSECURITY FOR FACILITY-RELATED CONTROL SYSTEMS
 - g. Section [01 91 00.15 10] TOTAL BUILDING COMMISSIONING
- 1.3 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 135	(2020; Errata 1-2 2021) BACnet—A Data Communication Protocol for Building Automation and Control Networks
ASHRAE FUN IP	(2021) Fundamentals Handbook, I-P Edition
ASHRAE FUN SI	(2021) Fundamentals Handbook, SI Edition

CONSUMER ELECTRONICS ASSOCIATION (CEA)

CEA-709.1-D	(2014) Control Network Protocol Specification
CEA-709.3	(1999; R 2015) Free-Topology Twisted-Pair Channel Specification

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE C62.41	(1991; R 1995) Recommended Practice on Surge Voltages in Low-Voltage AC Power Circuits
-------------	--

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA 250	(2020) Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum)
----------	---

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70	(2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2 2020; TIA 20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA 20-3; TIA 20-4) National Electrical Code
NFPA 90A	(2021) Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems

TRIDIUM, INC (TRIDIUM)

Niagara Framework	(2012) NiagaraAX User's Guide
Tridium Open NiCS	(2005) Understanding the NiagaraAX Compatibility Statement (NiCS)

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

UFC 3-410-02	(2018; with Change 2, 2021) Direct Digital Control for HVAC and Other Building Control Systems
--------------	--

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 5085-3	(2006; Reprint Nov 20121) Low Voltage Transformers - Part 3: Class 2 and Class 3 Transformers
-----------	---

1.4 DEFINITIONS

The following list of definitions includes terms used in Sections referenced by this Section and are included here for completeness. The definitions contained in this Section may disagree with how terms are defined or used in other documents, including documents referenced by this Section.

The definitions included here are the authoritative definitions for this Section and all Sections referenced by this Section.

After each term the protocol related to that term is included in parenthesis.

1.4.1 Alarm Generation (All protocols)

Alarm Generation is the monitoring of a value, comparison of the value to alarm conditions and the creation of an alarm when the conditions set for the alarm are met. Note that this does NOT

include delivery of the alarm to the final destination (such as a user interface) - see paragraph ALARM ROUTING in Section 25 10 10 UTILITY MONITORING AND CONTROL SYSTEM (UMCS) FRONT END AND INTEGRATION.

1.4.2 Building Automation and Control Network (BACnet) (BACnet)

The term BACnet is used in two ways. First meaning the BACnet Protocol Standard - the communication requirements as defined by ASHRAE 135 including all annexes and addenda. The second to refer to the overall technology related to the ASHRAE 135 protocol.

1.4.3 BACnet Advanced Application Controller (B-AAC) (BACnet)

A hardware device BTL Listed as a B-AAC, which is required to support BACnet Interoperability Building Blocks (BIBBs) for scheduling and alarming, but is not required to support as many BIBBs as a B-BC.

1.4.4 BACnet Application Specific Controller (B-ASC) (BACnet)

A hardware device BTL Listed as a B-ASC, with fewer BIBB requirements than a B-AAC. It is intended for use in a specific application.

1.4.5 BACnet Building Controller (B-BC) (BACnet)

A hardware device BTL Listed as a B-BC. A general-purpose, field-programmable device capable of carrying out a variety of building automation and control tasks including control and monitoring via direct digital control (DDC) of specific systems and data storage for trend information, time schedules, and alarm data. Like the other BTL Listed controller types (B-AAC, B-ASC etc.) a B-BC device is required to support the server ("B") side of the ReadProperty and WriteProperty services, but unlike the other controller types it is also required to support the client ("A") side of these services.

Communication between controllers requires that one of them support the client side and the other support the server side, so a B-BC is often used when communication between controllers is needed.

1.4.6 BACnet Broadcast Management Device (BBMD) (BACnet)

A communications device, typically combined with a BACnet router. A BBMD forwards BACnet broadcast messages to BACnet/IP devices and other BBMDs connected to the same BACnet/IP network. Each IP subnet that is part of a BACnet/IP network must have at least one BBMD. Note there are additional restrictions when multiple BBMDs share an IP subnet.

1.4.7 BACnet/IP (BACnet)

An extension of BACnet, Annex J, defines the use of a reserved UDP socket to transmit BACnet messages over IP networks. A BACnet/IP network is a collection of one or more IP subnets that share the same BACnet network number. See also paragraph BACNET BROADCAST MANAGEMENT DEVICE.

1.4.8 BACnet Internetwork (BACnet)

Two or more BACnet networks, connected with BACnet routers. In a BACnet Internetwork, there exists only one message path between devices.

1.4.9 BACnet Interoperability Building Blocks (BIBBs) (BACnet)

A BIBB is a collection of one or more ASHRAE 135 Services intended to define a higher level of interoperability. BIBBs are combined to build the BACnet functional requirements for a device in a specification. Some BIBBs define additional requirements (beyond requiring support for specific services) in order to achieve a level of interoperability. For example, the BIBB DS-V-A (Data Sharing-View-A), which would typically be used by a front-end, not only requires the client to support the ReadProperty Service, but also provides a list of data types (Object / Properties) which the client

must be able to interpret and display for the user.

In the BIBB shorthand notation, -A is the client side and -B is the server side.

The following is a list of some BIBBs used by this or referenced Sections:	
DS-COV-A	Data Sharing-Change of Value (A side)
DS-COV-B	Data Sharing-Change of Value (B side)
NM-RC-B	Network Management-Router Configuration (B side)
DS-RP-A	Data Sharing-Read Property (A side)
DS-RP-B	Data Sharing-Read Property (B side)
DS-RPM-A	Data Sharing-Read Property Multiple (A Side)
DS-RPM-B	Data Sharing-Read Property Multiple (B Side)
DS-WP-A	Data Sharing-Write Property (A Side)
DM-TS-B	Device Management-Time Synchronization (B Side)
DM-UTC-B	Device Management-UTC Time Synchronization (B Side)
DS-WP-B	Data Sharing-Write Property (B side)
SCHED-E-B	Scheduling-External (B side)
DM-OCD-B	Device Management-Object Creation and Deletion (B side)
AE-N-I-B	Alarm and Event-Notification Internal (B Side)
AE-N-E-B	Alarm and Event-Notification External (B Side)

The following is a list of some BIBBs used by this or referenced Sections:	
T-VMT-I-B	Trending-Viewing and Modifying Trends Internal (B Side)
T-VMT-E-B	Trending-Viewing and Modifying Trends External (B Side)

1.4.10 BACnet Network (BACnet)

In BACnet, a portion of the control Internetwork consisting of one or more segments connected by repeaters. Networks are separated by routers.

1.4.11 BACnet Operator Display (B-OD) (BACnet)

A basic operator interface with limited capabilities relative to a B-OVS. It is not intended to perform direct digital control. A B-OD profile could be used for LCD devices, displays affixed to BACnet devices, handheld terminals or other very simple user interfaces.

1.4.12 BACnet Segment (BACnet)

One or more physical segments interconnected by repeaters (ASHRAE 135).

1.4.13 BACnet Smart Actuator (B-SA) (BACnet)

A simple actuator device with limited resources intended for specific applications.

1.4.14 BACnet Smart Sensor (B-SS) (BACnet)

A simple sensing device with limited resources.

1.4.15 BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL) (BACnet)

Established by BACnet International to support compliance testing and interoperability testing activities and consists of BTL Manager and the BTL Working Group (BTL-WG). BTL also publishes Implementation Guidelines.

1.4.16 BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL) Listed (BACnet)

A device that has been listed by BACnet Testing Laboratory. Devices may be certified to a specific device profile, in which case the listing indicates that the device supports the required capabilities for that profile, or may be listed as "other".

1.4.17 Binary (All protocols)

A two-state system where an "ON" condition is represented by a high signal level and an "OFF" condition is represented by a low signal level. 'Digital' is sometimes used interchangeably with 'binary'.

1.4.18 Broadcast (BACnet)

Unlike most messages, which are intended for a specific recipient device, a broadcast message is intended for all devices on the network.

1.4.19 Building Control Network (BCN) (All protocols)

The network connecting all DDC Hardware within a building (or specific group of buildings).

1.4.20 Building Point of Connection (BPOC) (All protocols)

A FPOC for a Building Control System. (This term is being phased out of use in preference for FPOC but is still used in some specifications and criteria. When it was used, it typically referred to a piece of control hardware. The current FPOC definition typically refers instead to IT

1.4.21 Commandable (All protocols) See

Overridable.

1.4.22 Commandable Objects (BACnet)

Commandable Objects have a Commandable Property, Priority_Array, and Relinquish_Default Property as defined in ASHRAE 135, Clause 19.2, Command Prioritization.

1.4.23 Configurable (All protocols)

A property, setting, or value is configurable if it can be changed via hardware settings on the device, via the use of engineering software or over the control network from the front end, and is retained through (after) loss of power.

In a BACnet system, a property, setting, or value is configurable if it can be changed via one or more of:

- 1) via BACnet services (including proprietary BACnet services)
- 2) via hardware settings on the device

Note this is more stringent than the ASHRAE 135 definition.

1.4.24 Control Logic Diagram (All protocols)

A graphical representation of control logic for multiple processes that make up a system.

1.4.25 Device (BACnet)

A Digital Controller that contains a BACnet Device Object and uses BACnet to communicate with other devices.

1.4.26 Device Object (BACnet)

Every BACnet device requires one Device Object, whose properties represent the network visible properties of that device. Every Device Object requires a unique Object Identifier number on the BACnet Internetwork. This number is often referred to as the device instance or device ID.

1.4.27 Device Profile (BACnet)

A collection of BIBBs determining minimum BACnet capabilities of a device, defined in ASHRAE 135. Standard device profiles include BACnet Advanced Workstations (B-AWS), BACnet Building Controllers (B-BC), BACnet Advanced

Application Controllers (B-AAC), BACnet Application Specific Controllers (B-ASC), BACnet Smart Actuator (B-SA), and BACnet Smart Sensor (B-SS).

1.4.28 Digital Controller (All protocols)

An electronic controller, usually with internal programming logic and digital and analog input/output capability, which performs control functions.

1.4.29 Direct Digital Control (DDC) (All protocols)

Digital controllers performing control logic. Usually the controller directly senses physical values, makes control decisions with internal programs, and outputs control signals to directly operate switches, valves, dampers, and motor controllers.

1.4.30 Field Point of Connection (FPOC) (All protocols)

The FPOC is the point of connection between the UMCS IP Network and the field control network (either an IP network, a non-IP network, or a combination of both). The hardware at this location which provides the connection is generally an IT device such as a switch, IP router, or firewall.

In general, the term "FPOC Location" means the place where this connection occurs, and "FPOC Hardware" means the device that provides the connection. Sometimes the term "FPOC" is used to mean either and its actual meaning (i.e. location or hardware) is determined by the context in which it is used.

1.4.31 Gateway (All protocols)

A device that translates from one protocol application data format to another. Devices that change only the transport mechanism of the protocol - "translating" from TP/FT-10 to Ethernet/IP or from BACnet MS/TP to BACnet over IP for example - are not gateways as the underlying data format does not change. Gateways are also called Communications Bridges or Protocol Translators.

1.4.32 IEEE 802.3 Ethernet (All protocols)

A family of local-area-network technologies providing high-speed networking features over various media, typically Cat 5, 5e or Cat 6 twisted pair copper or fiber optic cable.

1.4.33 Internet Protocol (IP, TCP/IP, UDP/IP) (All protocols)

A communication method, the most common use is the World Wide Web. At the lowest level, it is based on Internet Protocol (IP), a method for conveying and routing packets of information over various LAN media. Two common protocols using IP are User Datagram Protocol (UDP) and Transmission Control Protocol (TCP). UDP conveys information to well-known "sockets" without confirmation of receipt. TCP establishes connections, also known as "sessions", which have end-to-end confirmation and guaranteed sequence of delivery.

1.4.34 Input/Output (I/O) (All protocols)

Physical inputs and outputs to and from a device, although the term sometimes describes network or "virtual" inputs or outputs. See also "Points".

1.4.35 I/O Expansion Unit (All protocols)

An I/O expansion unit provides additional point capacity to a digital controller

1.4.36 IP subnet (All protocols)

A group of devices which share a defined range IP addresses. Devices on a common IP subnet can share data (including broadcasts) directly without the need for the traffic to traverse an IP router.

1.4.37 Local-Area Network (LAN) (All protocols)

A communication network that spans a limited geographic area and uses the same basic communication technology throughout.

1.4.38 Local Display Panels (LDPs) (All protocols)

A DDC Hardware with a display and navigation buttons, and must provide display and adjustment of points as shown on the Points Schedule and as indicated.

1.4.39 Object (BACnet)

An ASHRAE 135 Object. The concept of organizing BACnet information into standard components with various associated Properties. Examples include Analog Input objects and Binary Output objects.

1.4.40 Object Identifier (BACnet)

A grouping of two Object properties: Object Type (e.g. Analog Value, Schedule, etc.) and Object Instance (in this case, a number). Object Identifiers must be unique within a device.

1.4.41 Object Instance (BACnet)

See paragraph OBJECT IDENTIFIER

1.4.42 Object Properties (BACnet)

Attributes of an object. Examples include present value and high limit properties of an analog input object. Properties are defined in ASHRAE 135; some are optional and some are required. Objects are controlled by reading from and writing to object properties.

1.4.43 Operator Configurable (All protocols)

Operator configurable values are values that can be changed from a single common front end user interface across multiple vendor systems. For non Niagara-based BACnet systems, a property, setting, or value in a device is Operator Configurable when it is Configurable and is either:

- 1) a Writable Property of a Standard BACnet Object; or
- 2) a Property of a Standard BACnet Object that is Writable when Out_Of_Service is TRUE and Out_Of_Service is Writable.

1.4.44 Override (All protocols)

Changing the value of a point outside of the normal sequence of operation where the change has priority over the sequence and where there is a mechanism for releasing the change such that the point returns to the normal value. Overrides persist until released or overridden at the same or higher priority but are not required to persist through a loss of power. Overrides are often used by operators to change values, and generally originate at a user interface (workstation or local display panel).

1.4.45 Packaged Equipment (All protocols)

Packaged equipment is a single piece of equipment provided by a manufacturer in a substantially complete and operable condition, where the controls (DDC Hardware) are factory installed, and the equipment is sold and shipped from the manufacturer as a single entity. Disassembly and reassembly of a large piece of equipment for shipping does not prevent it from being packaged equipment. Package units may require field installation of remote sensors. Packaged equipment is also called a "packaged unit".

Note industry may use the term "Packaged System" to mean a collection of equipment that is designed to work together where each piece of equipment is packaged equipment and there is a network that connects the equipment together. A "packaged system" of this type is NOT packaged equipment; it is a collection of packaged equipment, and each piece of equipment must individually meet specification requirements.

1.4.46 Packaged Unit (All protocols) See

packaged equipment.

1.4.47 Performance Verification Test (PVT) (All protocols)

The procedure for determining if the installed BAS meets design criteria prior to final acceptance. The PVT is performed after installation, testing, and balancing of mechanical systems. Typically the PVT is performed by the Contractor in the presence of the Government.

1.4.48 Physical Segment (BACnet)

A single contiguous medium to which BACnet devices are attached (ASHRAE 135).

1.4.49 Polling (All protocols)

A device periodically requesting data from another device.

1.4.50 Points (All protocols)

Physical and virtual inputs and outputs. See also paragraph INPUT/OUTPUT (I/O).

1.4.51 Proportional, Integral, and Derivative (PID) Control Loop (All protocols)

Three parameters used to control modulating equipment to maintain a setpoint. Derivative control is often not required for HVAC systems (leaving "PI" control).

1.4.52 Proprietary (BACnet)

Within the context of BACnet, any extension of or addition to object types, properties, PrivateTransfer services, or enumerations specified in ASHRAE 135. Objects with Object_Type values of 128 and above are Proprietary Objects. Properties with Property_Identifier of 512 and above are proprietary Properties.

1.4.53 Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) (BACnet)

A document, created by the manufacturer of a device, which describes which portions of the BACnet standard may be implemented by a given device. ASHRAE 135 requires that all ASHRAE 135 devices have a PICS, and also defines a minimum set of information that must be in it. A device as installed for a specific project may not implement everything in its PICS.

1.4.54 Repeater (All protocols)

A device that connects two control network segments and retransmits all information received on one side onto the other.

1.4.55 Router (All protocols)

A device that connects two ASHRAE 135 networks and controls traffic between the two by retransmitting signals received from one side onto the other based on the signal destination. Routers are used to subdivide a BACnet internetwork and to limit network traffic.

1.4.56 Segment (All protocols)

A 'single' section of a control network that contains no repeaters or routers. There is generally a limit on the number of devices on a segment, and this limit is dependent on the topology/media and device type.

1.4.57 Standard BACnet Objects (BACnet)

Objects with Object_Type values below 128 and specifically enumerated in Clause 21 of ASHRAE 135. Objects which are not proprietary. See paragraph PROPRIETARY.

1.4.58 Standard BACnet Properties (BACnet)

Properties with Property_Identifier values below 512 and specifically enumerated in Clause 21 of ASHRAE 135. Properties which are not proprietary. See Proprietary.

1.4.59 Standard BACnet Services (BACnet)

ASHRAE 135 services other than ConfirmedPrivateTransfer or UnconfirmedPrivateTransfer. See paragraph PROPRIETARY.

1.4.60 UMCS (All protocols)

UMCS stands for Utility Monitoring and Control System. The term refers to all components by which a project site monitors, manages, and controls real-time operation of HVAC and other building systems. These components include the UMCS "front-end" and all field building control systems connected to the front-end. The front-end consists of Monitoring and Control Software (user interface software), browser-based user interfaces and network infrastructure.

The network infrastructure (the "UMCS Network"), is an IP network connecting multiple building or facility control networks to the Monitoring and Control Software.

1.4.61 UMCS Network (All protocols)

The UMCS Network connects multiple building or facility control networks to the Monitoring and Control Software.

1.4.62 Writable Property (BACnet)

A Property is Writable when it can be changed through the use of one or more of the Write Property services defined in ASHRAE 135, Clause 15 regardless of the value of any other Property. Note that in the ASHRAE 135 standard, some Properties may be writable when the Out of Service Property is TRUE; for purposes of this Section, Properties that are only writable when the Out of Service Property is TRUE are not considered to be Writable.

1.5 PROJECT SEQUENCING

TABLE II: PROJECT SEQUENCING lists the sequencing of submittals as specified in paragraph SUBMITTALS (denoted by an 'S' in the 'TYPE' column) and activities as specified in PART 3 EXECUTION (denoted by an 'E' in the 'TYPE' column). TABLE II does not specify overall project milestone and completion dates.

- a. Sequencing for Submittals: The sequencing specified for submittals is the deadline by which the submittal must be initially submitted to the Government. Following submission there will be a Government review period as specified in Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES. If the submittal is not accepted by the Government, revise the submittal and resubmit it to the Government within 14 days of notification that the submittal has been rejected. Upon resubmittal there will be an additional Government review period. If the submittal is not accepted the process repeats until the submittal is accepted by the Government.
- b. Sequencing for Activities: The sequencing specified for activities indicates the earliest the activity may begin.
- c. Abbreviations: In TABLE II the abbreviation AAO is used for 'after approval of' and 'ACO' is used for 'after completion of'.

TABLE II. PROJECT SEQUENCING			
ITEM #	TYPE	DESCRIPTION	SEQUENCING (START OF ACTIVITY OR
1	S	Existing Conditions Report	
2	S	DDC Contractor Design Drawings	
3	S	Manufacturer's Product Data	
4	S	Pre-construction QC Checklist	
5	E	Install Building Control System	AAO #1 thru #4
6	E	Start-Up and Start-Up Testing	ACO #5
7	S	Post-Construction QC Checklist	ACO #6
8	S	Programming Software Configuration Software	ACO #6
9	S	Draft As-Built Drawings	ACO #6
10	S	Start-Up Testing Report	ACO #6
11	S	PVT Procedures	before schedule start of #12 and AAO #10
12	E	Execute PVT	AAO #9 and #11
13	S	PVT Report	ACO #12

TABLE II. PROJECT SEQUENCING			
ITEM #	TYPE	DESCRIPTION	SEQUENCING (START OF ACTIVITY OR
14	S	Controller Application Programs Controller Configuration Settings	AAO #13
15	S	Final As-Built Drawings	AAO #13
16	S	O&M Instructions	AAO #15
17	S	Training Documentation	AAO #10 and before scheduled start of #18
18	E	Training	AAO #16 and #17
19	S	Closeout QC Checklist	ACO #18

1.6 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submit the following in accordance with the Statement of Work:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

DDC Contractor Design Drawings; G

Draft As-Built Drawings; G

Final As-Built Drawings; G

SD-03 Product Data Programming

Software; G

Controller Application Programs; G Configuration Software; G

Controller Configuration Settings; G

Proprietary Multi-Split Engineering Tool Software; G Manufacturer's Product

Data; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Pre-Construction Quality Control (QC) Checklist; G Post-Construction

Quality Control (QC) Checklist; G Start-Up Testing Report; G

PVT Procedures; G PVT

Report; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operation and Maintenance (O&M) Instructions; G Training Documentation;

G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Enclosure Keys; G

Password Summary Report; G

Closeout Quality Control (QC) Checklist; G

1.7 DATA PACKAGE AND SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS

Technical data packages consisting of technical data and computer software (meaning technical data which relates to computer software) which are specifically identified in this project and which may be defined/required in other specifications must be delivered strictly in accordance with the CONTRACT CLAUSES and in accordance with the Contract Data Requirements List, DD Form 1423. Data delivered must be identified by reference to the particular specification paragraph against which it is furnished. All submittals not specified as technical data packages are considered 'shop drawings' under the Federal Acquisition Regulation Supplement (FARS) and must contain no proprietary information and be delivered with unrestricted rights.

1.8 SOFTWARE FOR DDC HARDWARE AND GATEWAYS

Provide all software related to the programming and configuration of DDC Hardware and Gateways as indicated. License all Software to the project site. The term "controller" as used in these requirements means both DDC Hardware and Gateways.

1.8.1 Configuration Software

For each type of controller, provide the configuration tool software in accordance with Section 23.09 23.02 BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS. Submit hard copies of the software user manuals for each software with the software submittal.

Submit Configuration Software on CD-ROM as a Technical Data Package. Submit 2 hard copies of the software user manual for each piece of software.

1.8.2 Controller Configuration Settings

For each controller, provide copies of the installed configuration settings as source code compatible with the configuration tool software for that controller in accordance with Section 23 09 23.02 BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS.

Submit Controller Configuration Settings on CD-ROM as a Technical Data Package. Include on the CD-ROM a list or table of contents clearly indicating which files are associated with each device. Submit 2 copies of the Controller Configuration Settings CD-ROM.

1.8.3 Programming Software

For each type of programmable controller, provide the programming software in accordance with Section 23 09 23.02 BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS. Submit hard copies of software user manuals for each software with the software submittal.

Submit Programming Software on CD-ROM as a Technical Data Package. Submit Four (4) hard copies of the software user manual for each piece of software.

1.8.4 Controller Application Programs

For each programmable controller, provide copies of the application program as source code compatible with the programming software for that controller in accordance with Section 23 09 23.02 BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS.

Submit Controller Application Programs on CD-ROM as a Technical Data Package. Include on the CD-ROM a list or table of contents clearly indicating which application program is associated with each device.

1.9 QUALITY CONTROL CHECKLISTS Ser Application Programs CD-ROM

The QC Checklist for BACnet Systems in APPENDIX A of this Section must be completed by the Contractor's Chief Quality Control (QC) Representative and submitted as indicated.

The QC Representative must verify each item indicated and initial in the space provided to indicate that the requirement has been met. The QC Representative must sign and date the Checklist prior to submission to the Government.

1.9.1 Pre-Construction Quality Control (QC) Checklist

Complete items indicated as Pre-Construction QC Checklist items in the QC Checklist.
Submit four copies of the Pre-Construction QC Checklist.

1.9.2 Post-Construction Quality Control (QC) Checklist

Complete items indicated as Post-Construction QC Checklist items in the QC Checklist.
Submit four copies of the Post-Construction QC Checklist.

1.9.3 Closeout Quality Control (QC) Checklist

Complete items indicated as Closeout QC Checklist items in the QC Checklist.
Submit four copies of the Closeout QC Checklist.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Provide products meeting the requirements of Section 23 09 13 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC, Section 23 09 23.02 BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS for

BACnet or Niagara BACnet systems, other referenced Sections, and this Section.

2.1 GENERAL PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

Units of the same type of equipment must be products of a single manufacturer. Each major component of equipment must have the manufacturer's name and address, and the model and serial number in a conspicuous place. Materials and equipment must be standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacturing of these and similar products. The standard products must have been in a satisfactory commercial or industrial use for two years prior to use on this project. The two year use must include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. DDC Hardware not meeting the two-year field service requirement is acceptable provided it has been successfully used by the Contractor in a minimum of two previous projects. The equipment items must be supported by a service organization. Items of the same type and purpose must be identical, including equipment, assemblies, parts and components.

2.2 PRODUCT DATA

Provide manufacturer's product data sheets documenting compliance with product specifications for each product provided under Section 23 09 13 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC, Section 23 09 23.02 BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS, or this Section. Provide product data for all products in a single indexed compendium, organized by product type. For all BACnet hardware: for each manufacturer, model and version (revision) of DDC Hardware provide the Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) in accordance with Section 23 09 23.02 BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS.

2.3 OPERATION ENVIRONMENTduct Data on CD-ROM

Unless otherwise specified, provide products rated for continuous operation under the following conditions:

- a. Pressure: Pressure conditions normally encountered in the installed location.
- b. Vibration: Vibration conditions normally encountered in the installed location.
- c. Temperature:
 - (1) Products installed indoors: Ambient temperatures in the range of 32 to 112 degrees F and temperature conditions outside this range normally encountered at the installed location.
 - (2) Products installed outdoors or in unconditioned indoor spaces: Ambient temperatures in the range of -35 to +151 degrees F and temperature conditions outside this range normally encountered at the installed location.
- d. Humidity: 10 to 95 percent relative humidity, noncondensing and humidity conditions outside this range normally encountered at the installed location.

2.4 WIRELESS CAPABILITY

Wireless not permitted.

2.5 ENCLOSURES

Enclosures supplied as an integral (pre-packaged) part of another product are acceptable.

Provide two Enclosure Keys for each lockable enclosure on a single ring per enclosure with a tag identifying the enclosure the keys operate. Provide enclosures meeting the following minimum requirements:

2.5.1 Outdoors

For enclosures located outdoors, provide enclosures meeting NEMA 250 Type 3 requirements.

2.5.2 Mechanical and Electrical Rooms

For enclosures located in mechanical or electrical rooms, provide enclosures meeting NEMA 250 Type 2 requirements.

2.5.3 Other Locations

For enclosures in other locations including but not limited to occupied spaces, above ceilings, and in plenum returns, provide enclosures meeting NEMA 250 Type 1 requirements.

2.6 WIRE AND CABLE

Provide wire and cable meeting the requirements of NFPA 70 and NFPA 90A in addition to the requirements of this specification and referenced specifications.

2.6.1 Terminal Blocks

For terminal blocks which are not integral to other equipment, provide terminal blocks which are insulated, modular, feed-through, clamp style with recessed captive screw-type clamping mechanism, suitable for DIN rail mounting, and which have enclosed sides or end plates and partition plates for separation.

2.6.2 Control Wiring for Binary Signals

For Control Wiring for Binary Signals, provide 18 AWG copper or thicker wire rated for 300-volt service.

2.6.3 Control Wiring for Analog Signals

For Control Wiring for Analog Signals, provide 18 AWG or thicker, copper, single- or multiple-twisted wire meeting the following requirements:

- a. minimum 2 inch lay of twist
- b. 100 percent shielded pairs
- c. at least 300-volt insulation
- d. each pair has a 20 AWG tinned-copper drain wire and individual overall pair insulation
- e. cables have an overall aluminum-polyester or tinned-copper cable-shield tape, overall 20 AWG tinned-copper cable drain wire, and overall cable insulation.

2.6.4 Power Wiring for Control Devices

For 24-volt circuits, provide insulated copper 18 AWG or thicker wire rated for 300 VAC service. For 120-volt circuits, provide 14 AWG or thicker stranded copper wire rated for 600-volt service.

2.6.5 Transformers

Provide UL 5085-3 approved transformers. Select transformers sized so that the connected load is no greater than 80 percent of the transformer rated capacity.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXISTING CONDITIONS

3.1.1 Existing Conditions Survey

Perform a field survey, including testing and inspection of the equipment to be controlled and submit an Existing Conditions Report documenting the current status and its impact on the Contractor's ability to meet this specification. For those items considered nonfunctional, document the deficiency in the report including explanation of the deficiencies and estimated costs to correct the deficiencies. As part of the report, define the scheduled need date for connection to existing equipment. Make written requests and obtain Government approval prior to disconnecting any controls and obtaining equipment downtime.

Submit four copies of the Existing Conditions Report.

3.1.2 Existing Equipment Downtime

Make written requests and obtain Government approval prior to disconnecting any controls and obtaining equipment downtime.

3.1.3 Existing Control System Devices

Inspect, calibrate, and adjust as necessary to place in proper working
3.2 INSTALLATIONg devices which are to be reused.

Fully install and test the control system in accordance Section 23 09 13 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC, Section 23 09 23.02 BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS for BACnet or Niagara BACnet systems, and this Section.

3.2.1 Dielectric Isolation

Provide dielectric isolation where dissimilar metals are used for connection and support. Install control system in a manner that provides clearance for control system maintenance by maintaining access space required to calibrate, remove, repair, or replace control system devices. Install control system such that it does not interfere with the clearance requirements for mechanical and electrical system maintenance.

3.2.2 Penetrations in Building Exterior

Make all penetrations through and mounting holes in the building exterior watertight.

3.2.3 Device Mounting Criteria

Install devices in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and as indicated and shown. Provide a weathershield for all devices installed outdoors. Provide clearance for control system maintenance by maintaining access space required to calibrate, remove, repair, or replace control system devices. Provide clearance for mechanical and electrical system maintenance; do not interfere with the clearance requirements for mechanical and electrical system maintenance.

3.2.4 Labels and Tags

Key all labels and tags to the unique identifiers shown on the As-Built drawings. For labels exterior to protective enclosures provide engraved plastic labels mechanically attached to the enclosure or DDC Hardware. Labels inside protective enclosures may be attached using adhesive, but must not be hand written. For tags, provide plastic or metal tags mechanically attached directly to each device or attached by a metal chain or wire.

- a. Label all Enclosures and DDC Hardware.
- b. Tag Airflow measurement arrays (AFMA) with flow rate range for signal output range, duct size, and pitot tube AFMA flow coefficient. Tag duct static pressure taps at the location of the pressure tap

3.2.5 Surge Protection

3.2.5.1 Power-Line Surge Protection

Protect equipment connected to AC circuits to withstand power-line surges in accordance with IEEE C62.41. Do not use fuses for surge protection.

3.2.5.2 Surge Protection for Transmitter and Control Wiring Protect DDC hardware against or provided DDC hardware capable of withstanding surges induced on control and transmitter wiring installed outdoors and as shown. Protect equipment against the following two waveforms:

- a. A waveform with a 10-microsecond rise time, a 1000-microsecond decay time and a peak current of 60 amps.
- b. A waveform with an 8-microsecond rise time, a 20-microsecond decay time and a peak current of 500 amperes.

3.2.6 Basic Cybersecurity Requirements

3.2.6.1 Passwords

For all devices with a password, change the password from the default password. Do not use the same password for more than one device. Coordinate selection of passwords with Owner. Provide a Password Summary Report documenting the password for each device and describing the procedure to change the password for each device.

Provide two hardcopies of the Password Summary Report, each copy in its own sealed envelope.

3.2.6.2 Wireless Capability

Unless otherwise indicated, disable wireless capability (including but not limited to radio frequency (RF), infrared and optical) for all devices with wireless capability. Optical and infrared capabilities may be disabled via a permanently affixed opaque cover plate. Password protecting a wireless connections does not meet this requirement; the wireless capability must be disabled.

3.2.6.3 IP Network Physical Security

Install all IP Network media in conduit. Install all IP devices including but not limited to IP-enabled DDC hardware and IP Network Hardware in lockable enclosures.

3.3 DRAWINGS AND CALCULATIONS

Provide drawings in the form and arrangement indicated and shown. Use the same abbreviations, symbols, nomenclature and identifiers shown. Assign a unique identifier as shown to each control system element on a drawing. When packaging drawings, group schedules by system. When space allows, it is permissible to include multiple schedules for the same system on a

single sheet. Except for drawings covering all systems, do not put information for different systems on the same sheet.

Submit hardcopy drawings on A3 17 by 11 inches sheets, and electronic drawings in PDF and in AutoCAD format. In addition, submit electronic drawings in editable Excel format for all drawings that are tabular, including but not limited to the Point Schedule and Equipment Schedule.

- a. Submit DDC Contractor Design Drawings consisting of each drawing indicated with pre-construction information depicting the intended control system design and plans. Submit DDC Contractor Design Drawings as a single complete package: 4 hard copies and 4 copies on CD-ROM.
- b. Submit Draft As-Built Drawings consisting of each drawing indicated updated with as-built data for the system prior to PVT. Submit Draft As-Built Drawings as a single complete package: 4 hard copies and 4 copies on CD-ROM.
- c. Submit Final As-Built Drawings consisting of each drawing indicated updated with all final as-built data. Final As-Built Drawings as a single complete package: 4 hard copies and 4 copies on CD-ROM.

3.3.1 Sample Drawings

Sample drawings in electronic format are available at the Whole Building Design Guide page for this section:

<http://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-23-09-00> These drawings may prove useful in demonstrating expected drawing formatting and example content and are provided for illustrative purposes only. Note that these drawings do not meet the content requirements of this Section and must be completed to meet project requirements.

3.3.2 Drawing Index and Legend

Provide an HVAC Control System Drawing Index showing the name and number of the building, military site, State or other similar designation, and Country. In the Drawing Index, list all Contractor Design Drawings, including the drawing number, sheet number, drawing title, and computer filename when used. In the Design Drawing Legend, show and describe all symbols, abbreviations and acronyms used on the Design Drawings. Provide a single Index and Legend for the entire drawing package.

3.3.3 Thermostat and Occupancy Sensor Schedule

Provide a thermostat and occupancy sensor schedule containing each thermostat's unique identifier, room identifier and control features and functions as shown. Provide a single thermostat and occupancy sensor schedule for the entire project.

3.3.4 Valve Schedule

Provide a valve schedule containing each valve's unique identifier, size, flow coefficient Kv (Cv), pressure drop at specified flow rate, spring range, positive positioner range, actuator size, close-off pressure to torque data, dimensions, and access and clearance requirements data. In the valve schedule include actuator selection data supported by calculations of the force required to move and seal the valve, access and clearance requirements. Provide a single valve schedule for the entire project.

3.3.5 Damper Schedule

Provide a damper schedule containing each damper's unique identifier, type (opposed or parallel blade), nominal and actual sizes, orientation of axis and frame, direction of blade rotation, actuator size and spring ranges, operation rate, positive positioner range, location of actuators and damper end switches, arrangement of sections in multi-section dampers, and methods of connecting dampers, actuators, and linkages. Include the AMCA 511 maximum leakage rate at the operating static-pressure differential for each damper in the Damper Schedule. Provide a single damper schedule for the entire project.

3.3.6 Project Summary Equipment Schedule

Provide a project summary equipment schedule containing the manufacturer, model number, part number and descriptive name for each control device, hardware and component provided under this specification. Provide a single project equipment schedule for the entire project.

3.3.7 Equipment Schedule

Provide system equipment schedules containing the unique identifier, manufacturer, model number, part number and descriptive name for each control device, hardware and component provided under this specification. Provide a separate equipment schedule for each HVAC system.

3.3.8 Occupancy Schedule

Provide an occupancy schedule drawing containing the same fields as the occupancy schedule Contract Drawing with Contractor updated information. Provide a single occupancy schedule for the entire project.

3.3.9 DDC Hardware Schedule

Provide a single DDC Hardware Schedule for the entire project and including following information for each device.

3.3.9.1 DDC Hardware Identifier

The Unique DDC Hardware Identifier for the device.

3.3.9.2 HVAC System

The system "name" used to identify a specific system (the name used on the system schematic drawing for that system).

3.3.9.3 BACnet Device Information

3.3.9.3.1 Device Object Identifier

The Device Object Identifier: The Object_Identifier of the Device Object

3.3.9.3.2 Network Number

The Network Number for the device.

3.3.9.3.3 MAC Address

The MAC Address for the device

3.3.9.3.4 BTL Listing

The BTL Listing of the device. If the device is listed under multiple BTL Profiles, indicate the profile that matches the use and configuration of the device as installed.

3.3.9.3.5 Proprietary Services Information

If the device uses non-standard ASHRAE 135 services as defined and permitted in Section 23 09 23.02 BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS, indicate that the device uses non-standard services and include a description of all non-standard services used. Describe usage and content such that a device from another vendor can interoperate with the device using the non-standard service. Provide descriptions with sufficient detail to allow a device from a different manufacturer to be programmed to both read and write the non-standard service request:

- a. read: interpret the data contained in the non-standard service and;
- b. write: given similar data, generate the appropriate non-standard service request.

3.3.9.3.6 Alarming Information

Indicate whether the device is used for alarm generation, and which types of alarm generation the device implements: intrinsic, local algorithmic, remote algorithmic.

3.3.9.3.7 Scheduling Information

Indicate whether the device is used for scheduling.

3.3.9.3.8 Trending Information

Indicate whether the device is used for trending, and indicate if the device is used to trend local values, remote values, or both.

3.3.10 Points Schedule

Provide a Points Schedule in tabular form for each HVAC system, with the indicated columns and with each row representing a hardware point, network point or configuration point in the system.

- a. When a Points Schedule was included in the Contract Drawing package, use the same fields as the Contract Drawing with updated information in addition to the indicated fields.
- b. When Point Schedules are included in the contract package, items requiring contractor verification or input have been shown in angle brackets (" $<$ " and " $>$ "), such as $<_>$ for a required entry or $<value>$ for a value requiring confirmation. Complete all items in brackets as well as any blank cells. Do not modify values which are not in brackets without approval.

Points Schedule Columns must include:

3.3.10.1 Point Name

The abbreviated name for the point using the indicated naming convention.

3.3.10.2 Description

A brief functional description of the point such as "Supply Air Temperature".

3.3.10.3 DDC Hardware Identifier

The Unique DDC Hardware Identifier shown on the DDC Hardware Schedule and used across all drawings for the DDC Hardware containing the point.

3.3.10.4 Settings

The value and units of any setpoints, configured setpoints, configuration parameters, and settings related to each point.

3.3.10.5 Range

The range of values, including units, associated with the point, including but not limited to a zone temperature setpoint adjustment range, a sensor measurement range, occupancy values for an occupancy input, or the status of a safety.

3.3.10.6 Input or Output (I/O) Type

The type of input or output signal associated with the point. Use the following abbreviations for entries in this column:

- a. AI: The value comes from a hardware (physical) Analog Input
- b. AO: The value is output as a hardware (physical) Analog Output
- c. BI: The value comes from a hardware (physical) Binary Input
- d. BO: The value is output as a hardware (physical) Binary Output
- e. PULSE: The value comes from a hardware (physical) Pulse Accumulator Input
- f. NET-IN: The value is provided from the network (generally from another device).
Use this entry only when the value is received from another device as part of scheduling or as part of a sequence of operation, not when the value is received on the network for supervisory functions such as trending, alarming, override or display at a user interface.
- g. NET-OUT: The value is provided to another controller over the network. Use this entry only when the value is transmitted to another device as part of scheduling or as part of a sequence of operation, not when the value is transmitted on the network for supervisory functions such as trending, alarming, override or display at a user interface.

3.3.10.7 Object and Property Information

The Object Type and Instance Number for the Object associated with the point. If the value of the point is not in the Present_Value Property, then also provide the Property ID for the Property containing the value of the point. Any point that is displayed at the front end or on an LDP, is trended, is used by another device on the network, or has an alarm condition must be documented here.

3.3.10.8 Network Data Exchange Information (Gets Data From, Sends Data To)

Provide the DDC Hardware Identifier of other DDC Hardware the point is shared with.

3.3.10.9 Override Information (Object Type and Instance Number)

For each point requiring an Override, indicate if the Object for the point is Commandable or, if the use of a separate Object was specifically approved by the Contracting Officer, provide the Object Type and Instance Number of the Object to be used in overriding the point.

3.3.10.10 Trend Object Information

For each point requiring a trend, indicate if the trend is Local or Remote, the trend Object type and the trend Object instance number. For remote trends provide the DDC Hardware Identifier for the device containing the trend Object in the Points Schedule notes.

3.3.10.11 Alarm Information

Indicate the Alarm Generation Type, Event Enrollment Object Instance Number, and Notification Class Object Instance Number for each point requiring an alarm. (Note that not all alarms will have Event Enrollment Objects.)

3.3.10.12 Configuration Information

Indicate the means of configuration associated with each point.

- a. For Operator Configurable Points indicate BACnet Object and Property information (Name, Type, Identifiers) containing the configurable value. Indicate whether the property is writable always, or only when Out_Of_Service is TRUE.
- b. For Configurable Points indicate the BACnet Object and Property information as for Operator Configurable points, or identification of the configurable settings from within the engineering software for the device or identification of the hardware settings on the device.

3.3.11 Riser Diagram

The Riser Diagram of the Building Control Network may be in tabular form, and must show all DDC Hardware and all Network Hardware, including network terminators. For each item, provide the unique identifier, common descriptive name, physical sequential order (previous and next device on the network), room identifier and location within room. A single riser diagram must be submitted for the entire system.

3.3.12 Control System Schematics

Provide control system schematics in the same form as the control system schematic Contract Drawing with Contractor updated information. Provide a control system schematic for each HVAC system.

3.3.13 Sequences of Operation Including Control Logic Diagrams

Provide HVAC control system sequence of operation and control logic diagrams in the same format as the Contract Drawings. Within these drawings, refer to devices by their unique identifiers. Submit sequences of operation and control logic diagrams for each HVAC system

3.3.14 Controller, Motor Starter and Relay Wiring Diagram

Provide controller wiring diagrams as functional wiring diagrams which show the interconnection of conductors and cables to each controller and to the identified terminals of input and output devices, starters and package equipment. Show necessary jumpers and ground connections and the labels of all conductors. Identify sources of power required for control systems and for packaged equipment control systems back to the panel board circuit breaker number, controller enclosures, magnetic starter, or packaged equipment control circuit. Show each power supply and transformer not integral to a controller, starter, or packaged equipment. Show the connected volt-ampere load and the power supply volt-ampere rating. Provide wiring diagrams for each HVAC system.

3.4 CONTROLLER TUNING

Tune each controller in a manner consistent with that described in the ASHRAE FUN IP and in the manufacturer's instruction manual. Tuning must consist of adjustment of the proportional, integral, and where applicable, the derivative (PID) settings to provide stable closed-loop control. Each loop must be tuned while the system or plant is operating at a high gain (worst case) condition, where high gain can generally be defined as a low-flow or low-load condition. Upon final adjustment of the PID settings, in response to a change in controller setpoint, the controlled variable must settle out at the new setpoint with no more than two (2) oscillations above and below setpoint.

Upon settling out at the new setpoint the controller output must be steady. With the exception of naturally slow processes such as zone temperature control, the controller must settle out at the new setpoint within five (5) minutes. Set the controller to its correct setpoint and record and submit the final PID configuration settings with the O&M Instructions and on the associated Points Schedule.

3.5 START-UP

3.5.1 Start-Up Test

Perform the following startup tests for each control system to ensure that the described control system components are installed and functioning per this specification.

Adjust, calibrate, measure, program, configure, set the time schedules, and otherwise perform all necessary actions to ensure that the systems function as indicated and shown in the sequence of operation and other contract documents.

3.5.1.1 Systems Check

An item-by-item check must be performed for each HVAC system

3.5.1.1.1 Step 1 - System Inspection

With the system in unoccupied mode and with fan hand-off-auto switches in the OFF position, verify that power and main air are available where required and that all output devices are in their failsafe and normal positions. Inspect each local display panel [and each M&C Client] to verify that all displays indicate shutdown conditions.

3.5.1.1.2 Step 2 - Calibration Accuracy Check

Perform a two-point accuracy check of the calibration of each HVAC control system sensing element and transmitter by comparing the value from the test instrument to the network value provided by the DDC Hardware. Use digital indicating test instruments, such as digital thermometers, motor-driven psychrometers, and tachometers. Use test instruments with accuracy at least twice as accurate as the specified sensor accuracy and with calibration traceable to National Institute of Standards and Technology standards. Check one the first check point in the bottom one-third of the sensor range, and the second in the top one-third of the sensor range. Verify that the sensing element-to-DDC readout accuracies at two points are within the specified product accuracy tolerances, and if not recalibrate or replace the device and repeat the calibration check.

3.5.1.1.3 Step 3 - Actuator Range Check

With the system running, apply a signal to each actuator through the DDC Hardware controller. Verify proper operation of the actuators and positioners for all actuated devices and record the signal levels for the extreme positions of each device. Vary the signal over its full range, and verify that the actuators travel from zero stroke to full stroke within the signal range. Where applicable, verify that all sequenced actuators move from zero stroke to full stroke in the proper direction, and move the connected device in the proper direction from one extreme position to the other. For valve actuators and damper actuators, perform the actuator range check under normal system pressures.

3.5.1.2 Weather Dependent Test

Perform weather dependent test procedures in the appropriate climatic season.

3.5.2 Start-Up Testing Report

Submit 4 copies of the Start-Up Testing Report. The report may be submitted as a Technical Data Package documenting the results of the tests performed and certifying that the system is installed and functioning per this specification, and is ready for the Performance Verification Test (PVT).

3.6 PERFORMANCE VERIFICATION TEST (PVT)

3.6.1 PVT Procedures

Prepare PVT Procedures based on Section 25 08 10 UTILITY MONITORING AND CONTROL SYSTEM TESTING explaining step-by-step, the actions and expected results that will demonstrate that the control system performs in accordance with the sequences of operation, and other contract documents. Submit 4 copies of the PVT Procedures. The PVT Procedures may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

3.6.1.1 Sensor Accuracy Checks

Include a one-point accuracy check of each sensor in the PVT procedures.

3.6.1.2 Endurance Test

Include a one-week endurance test as part of the PVT during which the system is operated continuously.

Use the building control system BACnet Trend Log or Trend Log Multiple Objects to trend all points shown as requiring a trend on the Point Schedule for the entire endurance test. If insufficient buffer capacity exists to trend the entire endurance test, upload trend logs during the course of the endurance test to ensure that no trend data is lost.

3.6.1.3 PVT Equipment List

Include in the PVT procedures a control system performance verification test equipment list that lists the equipment to be used during performance verification testing. For each piece of equipment, include manufacturer name, model number, equipment function, the date of the latest calibration, and the results of the latest calibration

3.6.2 PVT Execution

Demonstrate compliance of the control system with the contract documents. Using test plans and procedures approved by the Government, software capable of reading and writing COV Notification Subscriptions, Notification Class Recipient List Properties, event enrollments, demonstrate all physical and functional requirements of the project. Show, step-by-step, the actions and results demonstrating that the control systems perform in accordance with the sequences of operation. Do not start the performance verification test until after receipt of written permission by the Government, based on Government approval of the PVT Plan and Draft As-Builts and completion of balancing. UNLESS GOVERNMENT WITNESSING OF A TEST IS SPECIFICALLY WAIVED BY THE GOVERNMENT, PERFORM ALL TESTS WITH A

GOVERNMENT WITNESS. Do not conduct tests during scheduled seasonal off periods of base heating and cooling systems. If the system experiences any failures during the endurance test portion of the PVT, repair the system repeat the endurance test portion of the PVT until the system operates continuously and without failure for the specified endurance test period.

3.6.3 PVT Report

Prepare and submit a PVT report documenting all tests performed during the PVT and their results. Include all tests in the PVT procedures and any additional tests performed during PVT. Document test failures and repairs conducted with the test results.

Submit four copies of the PVT Report. The PVT Report may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

3.7 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE (O&M) INSTRUCTIONS

Provide HVAC control System Operation and Maintenance Instructions which include:

- a. "Data Package 3" as indicated in Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA for each piece of control equipment.
- b. "Data Package 4" as described in Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA for all air compressors.
- c. HVAC control system sequences of operation formatted as indicated.
- d. Procedures for the HVAC system start-up, operation and shut-down including the manufacturer's supplied procedures for each piece of equipment, and procedures for the overall HVAC system.
- e. As-built HVAC control system detail drawings formatted as indicated.
- f. Routine maintenance checklist. Provide the routine maintenance checklist arranged in a columnar format, where the first column lists all installed devices, the second column states the maintenance activity or that no maintenance required, the third column states the frequency of the maintenance activity, and the fourth column is used for additional comments or reference.
- g. Qualified service organization list, including at a minimum company name, contact name and phone number.
- h. Start-Up Testing Report.
- i. Performance Verification Test (PVT) Procedures and Report.

Submit 2 copies of the Operation and Maintenance Instructions, indexed and in booklet form. The Operation and Maintenance Instructions may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

3.8 MAINTENANCE AND SERVICE

Provide services, materials and equipment as necessary to maintain the entire system in an operational state as indicated for a period of one year from the date of final acceptance of the project. Minimize impacts on facility operations.

- a. The integration of the system specified in this section into a Utility Monitoring and Control System must not, of itself, void the warranty or otherwise alter the requirement for the one year maintenance and service period. Integration into a UMCS includes but is not limited to

establishing communication between devices in the control system and the front end or devices in another system.

- b. The changing of configuration properties must not, of itself, void the warranty or otherwise alter the requirement for the one year maintenance and service period.

3.8.1 Description of Work

Provide adjustment and repair of the system including the manufacturer's required sensor and actuator (including transducer) calibration, span and range adjustment.

3.8.2 Personnel

Use only service personnel qualified to accomplish work promptly and satisfactorily. Advise the Government in writing of the name of the designated service representative, and of any changes in personnel.

3.8.3 Scheduled Inspections

Perform two inspections at six-month intervals and provide work required. Perform inspections in June and December. During each inspection perform the indicated tasks:

- a. Perform visual checks and operational tests of equipment.
- b. Clean control system equipment including interior and exterior surfaces.
- c. Check and calibrate each field device. Check and calibrate 50 percent of the total analog inputs and outputs during the first inspection. Check and calibrate the remaining 50 percent of the analog inputs and outputs during the second major inspection. Certify analog test instrumentation accuracy to be twice the specified accuracy of the device being calibrated. Randomly check at least 25 percent of all binary inputs and outputs for proper operation during the first inspection. Randomly check at least 25 percent of the remaining binary inputs and outputs during the second inspection. If more than 20 percent of checked inputs or outputs failed the calibration check during any inspection, check and recalibrate all inputs and outputs during that inspection.
- d. Run system software diagnostics and correct diagnosed problems.
- e. Resolve any previous outstanding problems.

3.8.4 Scheduled Work

This work must be performed during regular working hours, Monday through Friday, excluding Federal holidays.

3.8.5 Emergency Service

The Government will initiate service calls when the system is not functioning properly. Qualified personnel must be available to provide service to the system. A telephone number where the service supervisor can be reached at all times must be provided. Service personnel must be at the site within 24 hours after receiving a request for service. The control system must be restored to proper operating condition as required per the O & M Manuals, and Closeout Documents.

3.8.6 Operation

After performing scheduled adjustments and repairs, verify control system operation as demonstrated by the applicable tests of the performance verification test.

3.8.7 Records and Logs

Keep dated records and logs of each task, with cumulative records for each major component, and for the complete system chronologically. Maintain a continuous log for all devices, including initial analog span and zero calibration values and digital points. Keep complete logs and provide logs for inspection onsite, demonstrating that planned and systematic adjustments and repairs have been accomplished for the control system.

3.8.8 Work Requests

Record each service call request as received and include its location, date and time the call was received, nature of trouble, names of the service personnel assigned to the task, instructions describing what has to be done, the amount and nature of the materials to be used, the time and date work started, and the time and date of completion. Submit a record of the work performed within 5 days after work is accomplished.

3.8.9 System Modifications

Submit recommendations for system modification in writing. Do not make system modifications, including operating parameters and control settings, without prior approval of the Government.

3.9 TRAINING

]

Conduct a training course for 4 operating staff members designated by the Government in the maintenance and operation of the system, including specified hardware and software. Conduct 32 hours of training at the project site within 30 days after successful completion of the performance verification test. The Government reserves the right to make audio and visual recordings (using Government supplied equipment) of the training sessions for later use. Provide audiovisual equipment and other training materials and supplies required to conduct training. A training day is defined as 8 hours of classroom instruction, including two 15 minute breaks and excluding lunchtime, Monday through Friday, during the daytime shift in effect at the training facility.

3.9.1 Training Documentation

Prepare training documentation consisting of:

- a. Course Attendee List: Develop the list of course attendees in coordination with and signed by the Controls[HVAC][Electrical] shop supervisor.
- b. Training Manuals: Provide training manuals which include an agenda, defined objectives for each lesson, and a detailed description of the subject matter for each lesson. When presenting portions of the course material by audiovisuals, deliver copies of those audiovisuals as a part of the printed training manuals.

3.9.2 Training Course Content

For guidance in planning the required instruction, assume that attendees will have a high school education, and are familiar with HVAC systems. During the training course, cover all of the material contained in the Operating and Maintenance Instructions, the layout and location of each controller enclosure, the layout of one of each type of equipment and the locations of each, the location of each control device external to the panels, the location of the compressed air station, preventive maintenance, troubleshooting, diagnostics, calibration, adjustment, commissioning, tuning, and repair procedures. Typical systems and similar systems may be treated as a group, with instruction on the physical layout of one such system. Present the results of the performance verification test and the Start-Up Testing Report as benchmarks of HVAC control system performance by which to measure operation and maintenance effectiveness.

3.9.3 Training Documentation Submittal Requirements

Submit hardcopy training manuals and all training materials on CD-ROM. Provide one hardcopy manual for each trainee on the Course Attendee List and 2 additional copies for archive at the project site. Provide 2 copies of the Course Attendee List with the archival copies. Training Documentation may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

APPENDIX A

<u>QC CHECKLIST FOR BACNET SYSTEMS</u>		
<p>This checklist is not all-inclusive of the requirements of this specification and should not be interpreted as such.</p> <p>Instructions: Initial each item in the space provided (_____) verifying that the requirement has been met.</p>		
<p>This checklist is for (circle one:)</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Pre-Construction QC Checklist Submittal Post- Construction QC Checklist Submittal Close-out QC Checklist Submittal</p>		
<p>Items verified for Pre-Construction, Post-Construction and Closeout QC Checklist Submittals:</p>		
1	All DDC Hardware is numbered on Control System Schematic Drawings.	_____
2	Signal lines on Control System Schematic are labeled with the signal type.	_____
3	Local Display Panel (LDP) Locations are shown on Control System Schematic drawings.	_____
<p>Items verified for Post-Construction and Closeout QC Checklist Submittals:</p>		
4	All sequences are performed as specified using DDC Hardware.	_____
5	Training schedule and course attendee list has been developed and coordinated with shops and submitted.	_____
<p>Items verified for Closeout QC Checklist Submittal:</p>		
6	Final As-built Drawings, including all Points Schedule drawings, accurately represent the final installed system.	_____
7	Programming software has been submitted for all programmable controllers.	_____
8	All software has been licensed to the Government.	_____

<u>QC CHECKLIST FOR BACNET SYSTEMS</u>		
9	O&M Instructions have been completed and submitted.	____
10	Training course has been completed.	____
11	All DDC Hardware is installed on a BACnet ASHRAE 135 network using either MS/TP in accordance with Clause 9 or IP in accordance with Annex J.	____
12	All DDC Hardware is BTL listed.	____
13	Communication between DDC Hardware is only via BACnet using standard services, except as specifically permitted by the specification. Non-standard services have been fully documented in the DDC Hardware Schedule.	____
14	Scheduling, Alarming, and Trending have been implemented using the standard BACnet Objects for these functions.	____
15	All Properties indicated as required to be Writable are Writable and Overrides have been provided as indicated	____
<div style="border-bottom: 1px solid black; margin-bottom: 5px;"></div>		
	(QC Representative Signature)	(Date)

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 09 13

INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR
HVAC
11/15, CHG 2: 05/21

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

This section provides for the instrumentation control system components excluding direct digital controllers, network controllers, gateways etc. that are necessary for a completely functional automatic control system. When combined with a Direct Digital Control (DDC) system, the Instrumentation and Control Devices covered under this section must be a complete system suitable for the control of the heating, ventilating and air conditioning (HVAC) and other building-level systems as specified and indicated.

- a. Install hardware to perform the control sequences as specified and indicated and to provide control of the equipment as specified and indicated.
- b. Install hardware such that individual control equipment can be replaced by similar control equipment from other equipment manufacturers with no loss of system functionality.
- c. Install and configure hardware such that the Government or their agents are able to perform repair, replacement, and upgrades of individual hardware without further interaction with the installing Contractor.

1.1.1 Verification of Dimensions

After becoming familiar with all details of the work, verify all dimensions in the field, and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing any work.

1.1.2 Drawings

The Government will not indicate all offsets, fittings, and accessories that may be required on the drawings. Carefully investigate the mechanical, electrical, and finish conditions that could affect the work to be performed, arrange such work accordingly, and provide all work necessary to meet such conditions.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

Related work specified elsewhere.

Section 23 30 00 HVAC AIR DISTRIBUTION

Section 23 05 15 COMMON PIPING FOR HVAC

Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR
HVAC

1.3 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AIR MOVEMENT AND CONTROL ASSOCIATION INTERNATIONAL, INC. (AMCA)

AMCA 500-D	(2018) Laboratory Methods of Testing Dampers for Rating
AMCA 511	(2010; R 2016) Certified Ratings Program for Air Control Devices

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

ANSI C12.1	(2014; Errata 2016) Electric Meters - Code for Electricity Metering
------------	---

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME B16.15	(2018) Cast Copper Alloy Threaded Fittings Classes 125 and 250
ASME B16.18	(2018) Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings
ASME B16.22	(2018) Standard for Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings
ASME B16.26	(2018) Standard for Cast Copper Alloy Fittings for Flared Copper Tubes
ASME B16.34	(2021) Valves - Flanged, Threaded and Welding End
ASME B40.100	(2013) Pressure Gauges and Gauge Attachments
ASME BPVC SEC VIII D1	(2019) BPVC Section VIII-Rules for Construction of Pressure Vessels Division 1 ASTM

INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A269/A269M	(2015; R 2019) Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel Tubing for General Service
ASTM A536	(1984; R 2019; E 2019) Standard Specification for Ductile Iron Castings
ASTM B32	(2020) Standard Specification for Solder Metal
ASTM B75/B75M	(2020) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube

ASTM B88	(2020) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube
ASTM D635	(2018) Standard Test Method for Rate of Burning and/or Extent and Time of Burning of Plastics in a Horizontal Position
ASTM D638	(2014) Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Plastics
ASTM D792	(2013) Density and Specific Gravity (Relative Density) of Plastics by Displacement
ASTM D1238	(2013) Melt Flow Rates of Thermoplastics by Extrusion Plastometer
ASTM D1693	(2015) Standard Test Method for Environmental Stress-Cracking of Ethylene Plastics

FLUID CONTROLS INSTITUTE (FCI)

FCI 70-2	(2021) Control Valve Seat Leakage
----------	-----------------------------------

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 142	(2007; Errata 2014) Recommended Practice for Grounding of Industrial and Commercial Power Systems - IEEE Green Book
----------	---

INTERNATIONAL SOCIETY OF AUTOMATION (ISA)

ISA 7.0.01 (1996)	Quality Standard for Instrument Air NATIONAL ELECTRICAL
-------------------	---

MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

ANSI C12.20	(2015; E 2018) Electricity Meters - 0.1, 0.2, and 0.5 Accuracy Classes
NEMA 250	(2020) Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum)
NEMA/ANSI C12.10	(2011; R 2021) Physical Aspects of Watthour Meters - Safety Standard

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70	(2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2 2020; TIA 20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA 20-3; TIA 20-4) National Electrical Code
NFPA 90A	(2021) Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 94	(2013; Reprint May 2021) UL Standard for Safety Tests for Flammability of Plastic Materials for Parts in Devices and Appliances
UL 555	(2006; Reprint Aug 2016) UL Standard for Safety Fire Dampers
UL 555S	(2014; Reprint Oct 2020) UL Standard for Safety Smoke Dampers
UL 1820	(2004; Reprint May 2013) UL Standard for Safety Fire Test of Pneumatic Tubing for Flame and Smoke Characteristics
UL 5085-3	(2006; Reprint Nov 2012) Low Voltage Transformers - Part 3: Class 2 and Class 3 Transformers

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Submittal requirements are specified in Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC.

1.5 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

Store and protect products from the weather, humidity, and temperature variations, dirt and dust, and other contaminants, within the storage condition limits published by the equipment manufacturer.

1.6 INPUT MEASUREMENT ACCURACY

Select, install and configure sensors, transmitters and DDC Hardware such that the maximum error of the measured value at the input of the DDC hardware is less than the maximum allowable error specified for the sensor or instrumentation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT

2.1.1 General Requirements

All products used to meet this specification must meet the indicated requirements, but not all products specified here will be required by every project. All products must meet the requirements both Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC and this Section.

2.1.2 Operation Environment Requirements

Unless otherwise specified, provide products rated for continuous operation under the following conditions:

2.1.2.1 Pressure

Pressure conditions normally encountered in the installed location.

2.1.2.2 Vibration

Vibration conditions normally encountered in the installed location.

2.1.2.3 Temperature

- a. Products installed indoors: Ambient temperatures in the range of 32 to 112 degrees F and temperature conditions outside this range normally encountered at the installed location.
- b. Products installed outdoors or in unconditioned indoor spaces: Ambient temperatures in the range of -35 to +151 degrees F and temperature conditions outside this range normally encountered at the installed location.

2.1.2.4 Humidity

10 to 95 percent relative humidity, non-condensing and also humidity conditions outside this range normally encountered at the installed location.

2.2 WEATHERSHIELDS

Provide weathershields constructed of galvanized steel painted white, unpainted aluminum, aluminum painted white, or white PVC.

2.3 TUBING

2.3.1 Copper

Provide ASTM B75/B75M or ASTM B88 rated tubing meeting the following requirements:

- a. For tubing 0.375 inch outside diameter and larger provide tubing with minimum wall thickness equal to ASTM B88, Type M
- b. For tubing less than 0.375 inch outside diameter provide tubing with minimum wall thickness of 0.025 inch
- c. For exposed tubing and tubing for working pressures greater than 30 psig provide hard copper tubing.
- d. Provide fittings which are ASME B16.18 or ASME B16.22 solder type using ASTM B32 95-5 tin-antimony solder, or which are ASME B16.26 compression type.

2.3.2 Polyethylene Tubing

Provide flame-resistant, multiple polyethylene tubing in flame-resistant protective sheath with mylar barrier, or unsheathed polyethylene tubing in rigid metal, intermediate metal, or electrical metallic tubing conduit for areas where tubing is exposed. Single, unsheathed, flame-resistant polyethylene tubing may be used where concealed in walls or above ceilings and within control panels. Do not provide polyethylene tubing for [systems indicated as critical and] smoke removal systems, or for systems with working pressures over 30 psig. Provide compression or brass barbed push-on type fittings. Provide extruded seamless polyethylene tubing conforming to the following:

- a. Minimum Burst Pressure Requirements: 100 psig at 75 degrees F to 25 psig at 150 degrees F.
- b. Stress Crack Resistance: ASTM D1693, 200 hours minimum.
- c. Tensile Strength (Minimum): ASTM D638, 1100 psi.
- d. Flow Rate (Average): ASTM D1238, 0.30 decigram per minute.
- e. Density (Average): ASTM D792, 57.5 pounds per cubic feet.

- f. Burn rate: ASTM D635
 - g. Flame Propagation: UL 1820, less than 5 feet ASTM D635
 - h. Average Optical Density: UL 1820, less than 0.15 ASTM D635
- 2.4 WIRE AND CABLE

Provide wire and cable meeting the requirements of NFPA 70 and NFPA 90A in addition to the requirements of this specification and referenced specifications.

2.4.1 Terminal Blocks

For terminal blocks which are not integral to other equipment, provide terminal blocks which are insulated, modular, feed-through, clamp style with recessed captive screw-type clamping mechanism, suitable for DIN rail mounting, and which have enclosed sides or end plates and partition plates for separation.

2.4.2 Control Wiring for Binary Signals

For Control Wiring for Binary Signals, provide 18 AWG copper or thicker wire rated for 300-volt service.

2.4.3 Control Wiring for Analog Signals

For Control Wiring for Analog Signals, provide 18 AWG or thicker, copper, single- or multiple-twisted wire meeting the following requirements:

- a. minimum 2 inch lay of twist
- b. 100 percent shielded pairs
- c. at least 300-volt insulation
- d. each pair has a 20 AWG tinned-copper drain wire and individual overall pair insulation
- e. cables have an overall aluminum-polyester or tinned-copper cable-shield tape, overall 20 AWG tinned-copper cable drain wire, and overall cable insulation.

2.4.4 Power Wiring for Control Devices

For 24-volt circuits, provide insulated copper 18 AWG or thicker wire rated for 300 VAC service. For 120-volt circuits, provide 14 AWG or thicker stranded copper wire rated for 600-volt service.

2.4.5 Transformers

Provide UL 5085-3 approved transformers. Select transformers sized so that the connected load is no greater than 80 percent of the transformer rated capacity.

2.5 AUTOMATIC CONTROL VALVES

Provide valves with stainless-steel stems and stuffing boxes with extended necks to clear the piping insulation. Provide valves with bodies meeting ASME B16.34 or ASME B16.15 pressure and temperature class ratings based on the design operating temperature and 150 percent of the system design operating pressure. Unless otherwise specified or indicated, provide valves meeting FCI 70-2 Class III leakage rating. Provide valves rated for modulating or two-position service as indicated, which close against a differential pressure indicated as the Close-

Off pressure and which are

2.5.1 Valve Type normally-Closed, or Fail-In-Last-Position as indicated.

2.5.1.1 Liquid Service 150 Degrees F or Less

Use either globe valves or ball valves except that butterfly valves may be used for sizes 4 inch and larger.

2.5.1.2 Liquid Service Above 150 Degrees F

- a. Two-position valves: Use either globe valves or ball valves except that butterfly valves may be used for sizes 4 inch and larger.
- b. Modulating valves: Use globe valves except that butterfly valves may be used for sizes 4 inch and larger.

2.5.2 Valve Flow Coefficient and Flow Characteristic

2.5.2.1 Two-Way Modulating Valves

Provide the valve coefficient (Cv) indicated. Provide equal-percentage flow characteristic for liquid service except for butterfly valves. Provide linear flow characteristic for steam service except for butterfly valves.

2.5.2.2 Three-Way Modulating Valves

Provide the valve coefficient (Cv) indicated. Provide linear flow characteristic with constant total flow throughout full plug travel.

2.5.3 Two-Position Valves Use full line size full port valves with maximum available (Cv).

2.5.4 Globe Valves

2.5.4.1 Liquid Service Not Exceeding 150 Degrees F

- a. Valve body and body connections:
 - (1) valves 1-1/2 inches and smaller: brass or bronze body, with threaded or union ends
 - (2) valves from 2 inches to 3 inches inclusive: brass, bronze, or iron bodies. 2 inch valves with threaded connections; 2-1/2 to 3 inches valves with flanged connections
- b. Internal valve trim: Brass or bronze.
- c. Stems: Stainless steel.
- d. Provide valves compatible with a solution of 50 percent ethylene or propylene glycol.

2.5.4.2 Liquid Service Not Exceeding 250 Degrees F

- a. Valve body and body connections:
 - (1) valves 1-1/2 inches and smaller: brass or bronze body, with threaded or union ends

(2) valves from 2 inches to 3 inches inclusive: brass, bronze, or iron bodies. 2 inch valves with threaded connections; 2-1/2 to 3 inches valves with flanged connections

- b. Internal trim: Type 316 stainless steel including seats, seat rings, modulation plugs, valve stems, and springs.
- c. Provide valves with non-metallic parts suitable for a minimum continuous operating temperature of 250 degrees F or 50 degrees F above the system design temperature, whichever is higher.

2.5.5 Ball Valves

2.5.5.1 Liquid Service Not Exceeding 150 Degrees F

- a. Valve body and connections:

(1) valves 1-1/2 inches and smaller: bodies of brass or bronze, with threaded or union ends

(2) valves from 2 inches to 3 inches inclusive: bodies of brass, bronze, or iron. 2 inch valves with threaded connections; valves from 2-1/2 to 3 inches with flanged connections.

- b. Ball: Stainless steel or nickel-plated brass or chrome-plated brass.
- c. Seals: Reinforced Teflon seals and EPDM O-rings.
- d. Stem: Stainless steel, blow-out proof.

2.5.6 Butterfly Valves

Provide butterfly valves which are threaded lug type suitable for dead-end service and modulation to the fully-closed position, with carbon-steel bodies or with ductile iron bodies in accordance with ASTM A536. Provide butterfly valves with non-corrosive discs, stainless steel shafts supported by bearings, and EPDM seats suitable for temperatures from -20 to +250 degrees F. Provide valves with rated Cv of the Cv at 70 percent (60 degrees) open position. Provide valves meeting FCI 70-2 Class VI leakage rating.

2.6 DAMPERS

2.6.1 Damper Assembly

Provide single damper sections with blades no longer than 48 inches and which are no higher than 72 inches and damper blade width of 8 inches or less. When larger sizes are required, combine damper sections. Provide dampers made of steel, or other materials where indicated and with assembly frames constructed of 0.07 inch minimum thickness galvanized steel channels with mitered and welded corners. Steel channel frames constructed of 0.06 inch minimum thickness are acceptable provided the corners are reinforced.

- a. Flat blades must be made rigid by folding the edges. Blade-operating linkages must be within the frame so that blade-connecting devices within the same damper section must not be located directly in the air stream.
- b. Damper axles must be 1/2 inch minimum, plated steel rods supported in the damper frame by stainless steel or bronze bearings. Blades mounted vertically must be supported by thrust bearings.
- c. Provide dampers which do not exceed a pressure drop through the damper of 0.04 inches

water gauge at 1000 ft/min in the wide-open position. Provide dampers with frames not less than 2 inch in width. Provide dampers which have been tested in accordance with AMCA 500-D.

2.6.2 Operating Linkages

For operating links external to dampers, such as crank arms, connecting rods, and line shafting for transmitting motion from damper actuators to dampers, provide links able to withstand a load equal to at least 300 percent of the maximum required damper-operating force without deforming. Rod lengths must be adjustable. Links must be brass, bronze, zinc-coated steel, or stainless steel. Working parts of joints and clevises must be brass, bronze, or stainless steel. Adjustments of crank arms must control the open and closed positions of dampers.

2.6.3 Damper Types

2.6.3.1 Flow Control Dampers

Provide parallel-blade or opposed blade type dampers for outside air, return air, relief air, exhaust, face and bypass dampers as indicated on the Damper Schedule. Blades must have interlocking edges. The channel frames of the dampers must be provided with jamb seals to minimize air leakage. Unless otherwise indicated, dampers must meet AMCA 511 Class 1 requirements. Outside air damper seals must be suitable for an operating temperature range of -40 to +167 degrees F. Dampers must be rated at not less than 2000 ft/min air velocity.

2.6.3.2 Mechanical Rooms and Other Utility Space Ventilation Dampers

Provide utility space ventilation dampers as indicated. Unless otherwise indicated provide AMCA 511 class 3 dampers. Provide dampers rated at not less than 1500 ft/min air velocity.

2.7 SENSORS AND INSTRUMENTATION

Unless otherwise specified, provide sensors and instrumentation which incorporate an integral transmitter. Sensors and instrumentation, including their transmitters, must meet the specified accuracy and drift requirements at the input of the connected DDC Hardware's analog-to-digital conversion.

2.7.1 Analog and Binary Transmitters

Provide transmitters which match the characteristics of the sensor. Transmitters providing analog values must produce a linear 4-20 mAdc, 0-10 Vdc signal corresponding to the required operating range and must have zero and span adjustment. Transmitters providing binary values must have dry contacts rated at 1A at 24 Volts AC.

2.7.2 Network Transmitters

Sensors and Instrumentation incorporating an integral network connection are considered DDC Hardware and must meet the DDC Hardware requirements of Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS when used in a Lonworks network, or the requirements of 23 09 23.02 BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS when used in a BACnet network.

2.7.3 Temperature Sensors

Provide the same sensor type throughout the project. Temperature sensors may be provided without transmitters. Where transmitters are used, the range must be the smallest available from the manufacturer and suitable for the application such that the range encompasses the expected range of temperatures to be measured. The end to end accuracy includes the combined effect of sensitivity, hysteresis, linearity and repeatability between the measured variable and the end user

interface (graphic presentation) including transmitters if used.

2.7.3.1 Sensor Accuracy and Stability of Control

2.7.3.1.1 Conditioned Space Temperature

Plus or minus 0.5 degree F over the operating range.

2.7.3.1.2 Unconditioned Space Temperature

- a. Plus or minus 1 degree F over the range of 30 to 131 degrees F AND
- b. Plus or minus 4 degrees F over the rest of the operating range.

2.7.3.1.3 Duct Temperature

Plus or minus 0.5 degree F

2.7.3.1.4 Outside Air Temperature

- a. Plus or minus 2 degrees F over the range of -30 to +130 degrees F AND
- b. Plus or minus 1 degree F over the range of 30 to 130 degrees F.

2.7.3.2 Transmitter Drift

The maximum allowable transmitter drift: 0.25 degrees F per year.

2.7.3.3 Point Temperature Sensors

Point Sensors must be encapsulated in epoxy, series 300 stainless steel, anodized aluminum, or copper.

2.7.3.4 Temperature Sensor Details

2.7.3.4.1 Room Type

Provide the sensing element components within a decorative protective cover suitable for surrounding decor.

2.7.3.4.2 Duct Probe Type

Ensure the probe is long enough to properly sense the air stream temperature.

2.7.3.4.3 Duct Averaging Type

Continuous averaging sensors must be one foot in length for each 1 square foot of duct cross-sectional area, and a minimum length of 5 feet.

2.7.3.4.4 Outside Air Type

Provide the sensing element rated for outdoor use

2.7.4 Relative Humidity Sensor

Relative humidity sensors must use bulk polymer resistive or thin film capacitive type non-saturating sensing elements capable of withstanding a saturated condition without permanently affecting calibration or sustaining damage. The sensors must include removable protective membrane filters. Where required for exterior installation, sensors must be capable of surviving below freezing

temperatures and direct contact with moisture without affecting sensor calibration. When used indoors, the sensor must be capable of being exposed to a condensing air stream (100 percent relative humidity) with no adverse effect to the sensor's calibration or other harm to the instrument. The sensor must be of the wall-mounted or duct-mounted type, as required by the application, and must be provided with any required accessories. Sensors used in duct high-limit applications must have a bulk polymer resistive sensing element. Duct-mounted sensors must be provided with a duct probe designed to protect the sensing element from dust accumulation and mechanical damage. Relative humidity (RH) sensors must measure relative humidity over a range of 0 percent to 100 percent with an accuracy of plus or minus 3 percent. RH sensors must function over a temperature range of 40 to 135 degrees F and must not drift more than 1 percent per year.

2.7.5 Differential Pressure Instrumentation

2.7.5.1 Differential Pressure Sensors

Provide Differential Pressure Sensors with ranges as indicated or as required for the application. Pressure sensor ranges must not exceed the high end range indicated on the Points Schedule by more than 50 percent. The over pressure rating must be a minimum of 150 percent of the highest design pressure of either input to the sensor. The accuracy must be plus or minus 1 percent of full scale. The sensor must have a maximum drift of 2 percent per year

2.7.5.2 Differential Pressure Switch

Provide differential pressure switches with a user-adjustable setpoint which are sized for the application such that the setpoint is between 25 percent and 75 percent of the full range. The over pressure rating must be a minimum of 150 percent of the highest design pressure of either input to the sensor. The switch must have two sets of contacts and each contact must have a rating greater than it's connected load. Contacts must open or close upon rise of pressure above the setpoint or drop of pressure below the setpoint as indicated.

2.7.6 Flow Sensors

2.7.6.1 Airflow Measurement Array (AFMA)

2.7.6.1.1 Airflow Straightener

Provide AFMAs which contain an airflow straightener if required by the AFMA manufacturer's published installation instructions. The straightener must be contained inside a flanged sheet metal casing, with the AFMA located as specified according to the published recommendation of the AFMA manufacturer. In the absence of published documentation, provide airflow straighteners if there is any duct obstruction within 5 duct diameters upstream of the AFMA. Air-flow straighteners, where required, must be constructed of 0.125 inch aluminum honeycomb and the depth of the straightener must not be less than 1.5 inches.

2.7.6.1.2 Resistance to Airflow

The resistance to air flow through the AFMA, including the airflow straightener must not exceed 0.085 inch water gauge at an airflow of 2,000 fpm. AFMA construction must be suitable for operation at airflows of up to 5000 fpm over a temperature range of 40 to 120 degrees F.

2.7.6.1.3 Outside Air Temperature

In outside air measurement or in low-temperature air delivery applications, provide an AFMA certified by the manufacturer to be accurate as specified over a temperature range of -20 to +120 degrees F.

2.7.6.1.4 Pitot Tube AFMA

Each Pitot Tube AFMA must contain an array of velocity sensing elements. The velocity sensing elements must be of the multiple pitot tube type with averaging manifolds. The sensing elements must be distributed across the duct cross section in the quantity and pattern specified or recommended by the published installation instructions of the AFMA manufacturer.

- a. Pitot Tube AFMAs for use in airflows over 600 fpm must have an accuracy of plus or minus 5 percent over a range of 500 to 2500 fpm.
- b. Pitot Tube AFMAs for use in airflows under 600 fpm must have an accuracy of plus or minus 5 percent over a range of 125 to 2500 fpm.

2.7.6.1.5 Electronic AFMA

Each electronic AFMA must consist of an array of velocity sensing elements of the resistance temperature detector (RTD) or thermistor type. The sensing elements must be distributed across the duct cross section in the quantity and pattern specified or recommended by the published application data of the AFMA manufacturer. Electronic AFMAs must have an accuracy of plus or minus 5 percent over a range of 125 to 5,000 fpm and the output must be temperature compensated over a range of 32 to 212 degrees F.

2.7.7 Electrical Instruments

Provide Electrical Instruments with an input range as indicated or sized for the application. Unless otherwise specified, AC instrumentation must be suitable for 60 Hz operation.

2.7.7.1 Current Transducers

Current transducers must accept an AC current input and must have an accuracy of plus or minus [0.5] [2] percent of full scale. The device must have a means for calibration. Current transducers for variable frequency applications must be rated for variable frequency operation.

2.7.7.2 Current Sensing Relays (CSRs)

Current sensing relays (CSRs) must provide a normally-open contact with a voltage and amperage rating greater than its connected load. Current sensing relays must be of split-core design. The CSR must be rated for operation at 200 percent of the connected load. Voltage isolation must be a minimum of 600 volts. The CSR must auto-calibrate to the connected load or be adjustable and field calibrated. Current sensors for variable frequency applications must be rated for variable frequency operation.

2.7.7.3 Voltage Transducers

Voltage transducers must accept an AC voltage input and have an accuracy of plus or minus 0.25 percent of full scale. The device must have a means for calibration. Line side fuses for transducer protection must be provided.

2.7.7.4 Energy Metering

2.7.7.5 Watt or Watthour Transducers

Watt transducers must measure voltage and current and must output kW or kWh or both kW and kWh as indicated. kW outputs must have an accuracy of plus or minus 0.5 percent over a power factor range of 0.1 to 1. kWh outputs must have an accuracy of plus or minus 0.5 percent over a power factor range of 0.1 to 1.

2.7.7.5.1 Watthour Revenue Meter (with and without Demand Register)

All Watthour revenue meters must measure voltage and current and must be in accordance with ANSI C12.1 with an ANSI C12.20 Accuracy class of 0.5 and must have pulse initiators for remote monitoring of Watthour consumption. Pulse initiators must consist of form C contacts with a current

rating not to exceed two amperes and voltage not to exceed 500 V, with combinations of VA not to exceed 100 VA, and a life rating of one billion operations. Meter sockets must be in accordance with NEMA/ANSI C12.10. Watthour revenue meters with demand registers must output instantaneous demand in addition to the pulse initiators.

2.7.8 Occupancy Sensors

Occupancy sensors must have occupancy-sensing sensitivity adjustment and an adjustable off-delay timer with a setpoint of 15 minutes. Adjustments accessible from the face of the unit are preferred. Occupancy sensors must be rated for operation in ambient air temperatures ranging from 40 to 95 degrees F or temperatures normally encountered in the installed location. Sensors integral to wall mount on-off light switches must have an auto-off switch. Wall switch sensors must be decorator style and must fit behind a standard decorator type wall plate. All occupancy sensors, power packs, and slave packs must be UL listed. In addition to any outputs required for lighting control, the occupancy sensor must provide an output for the HVAC control system.

2.7.8.1 Passive Infrared (PIR) Occupancy Sensors

PIR occupancy sensors must have a multi-level, multi-segmented viewing lens and a conical field of view with a viewing angle of 180 degrees and a detection of at least 20 feet unless otherwise indicated or specified. PIR Sensors must provide field-adjustable background light-level adjustment with an adjustment range suitable to the light level in the sensed area, room or space. PIR sensors must be immune to false triggering from RFI and EMI.

2.7.9 Temperature Switch

2.7.9.1 Duct Mount Temperature Low Limit Safety Switch (Freezestat)

Duct mount temperature low limit switches (Freezestats) must be manual reset, low temperature safety switches at least 1 foot long per square foot of coverage which must respond to the coldest 18 inch segment with an accuracy of plus or minus 3.6 degrees F. The switch must have a field-adjustable setpoint with a range of at least 30 to 50 degrees F. The switch must have two sets of contacts, and each contact must have a rating greater than its connected load. Contacts must open or close upon drop of temperature below setpoint as indicated and must remain in this state until reset.

2.7.10 Damper End Switches

Each end switch must be a hermetically sealed switch with a trip lever and over-travel mechanism. The switch enclosure must be suitable for mounting on the duct exterior and must permit setting the position of the trip lever that actuates the switch. The trip lever must be aligned with the damper blade.

End switches integral to an electric damper actuator are allowed as long as at least one is adjustable over the travel of the actuator.

2.8 INDICATING DEVICES

All indicating devices must display readings in [metric (SI)][English (inch-pound)] units.

2.8.1 Thermometers

Provide bi-metal type thermometers at locations indicated. Thermometers must have either 9 inch long scales or 3.5 inch diameter dials, with insertion, immersion, or averaging elements. Provide matching thermowells for pipe-mounted installations. Select scale ranges suitable for the intended service, with the normal operating temperature near the scale's midpoint. The thermometer's accuracy must be plus or minus 2 percent of the scale range.

2.8.1.1 Piping System Thermometers

Piping system thermometers must have brass, malleable iron or aluminum alloy case and frame, clear protective face, permanently stabilized glass tube with indicating-fluid column, white face, black numbers, and a 9 inch scale. Piping system thermometers must have an accuracy of plus or minus 1 percent of scale range. Thermometers for piping systems must have rigid stems with straight, angular, or inclined pattern. Thermometer stems must have expansion heads as required to prevent breakage at extreme temperatures. On rigid-stem thermometers, the space between bulb and stem must be filled with a heat-transfer medium.

2.8.1.2 Air-Duct Thermometers

Air-duct thermometers must have perforated stem guards and 45-degree adjustable duct flanges with locking mechanism.

2.8.2 Pressure Gauges

Provide pipe-mounted pressure gauges at the locations indicated. Gauges must conform to ASME B40.100 and have a 4 inch diameter dial and shutoff cock. Select scale ranges suitable for the intended service, with the normal operating pressure near the scale's midpoint. The gauge's accuracy must be plus or minus 2 percent of the scale range.

Gauges must be suitable for field or panel mounting as required, must have black legend on white background, and must have a pointer traveling through a 270-degree arc. Gauge range must be suitable for the application with an upper end of the range not to exceed 150 percent of the design upper limit. Accuracy must be plus or minus 3 percent of scale range. Gauges must meet requirements of ASME B40.100.

2.8.3 Low Differential Pressure Gauges

Gauges for low differential pressure measurements must be a minimum of 3.5 inch (nominal) size with two sets of pressure taps, and must have a diaphragm-actuated pointer, white dial with black figures, and pointer zero adjustment. Gauge range must be suitable for the application with an upper end of the range not to exceed 150 percent of the design upper limit. Accuracy must be plus or minus two percent of scale range.

2.9 OUTPUT DEVICES

2.9.1 Actuators

Actuators must be electric (electronic). All actuators must be normally open (NO), normally closed (NC) or fail-in-last-position (FILP) as indicated. Normally open and normally closed actuators must be of mechanical spring return type. Electric actuators must have an electronic cut off or other means to provide burnout protection if stalled. Actuators must have a visible position indicator. Electric actuators must provide position feedback to the controller as indicated. Actuators must smoothly and fully open or close the devices to which they are applied. Electric actuators must have a full stroke response time in both directions of 90 seconds or less at rated load. Electric actuators must be of the foot-mounted type with an oil-immersed gear train or the direct-coupled type. Where multiple electric actuators operate from a common signal, the actuators must provide an output signal identical to its input signal to the additional devices. All actuators must be rated for their operating environment. Actuators used outdoors must be designed and rated for outdoor use. Actuators under continuous exposure to water, such as those used in sumps, must be submersible.

Actuators incorporating an integral network connection are considered DDC Hardware and must meet the DDC Hardware requirements of Section 23 09 23.02

2.9.2 RelaysT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS.

Relays must have contacts rated for the intended application, indicator light, and dust proof enclosure. The indicator light must be lit when the coil is energized and off when coil is not energized.

Control relay contacts must have utilization category and ratings selected for the application. Each set of contacts must incorporate a normally open (NO), normally closed (NC) and common contact. Relays must be rated for a minimum life of one million operations.

2.10 USER INPUT DEVICES

User Input Devices, including potentiometers, switches and momentary contact push-buttons. Potentiometers must be of the thumb wheel or sliding bar type. Momentary Contact Push-Buttons may include an adjustable timer for their output. User input devices must be labeled for their function.

2.11 MULTIFUNCTION DEVICES

Multifunction devices are products which combine the functions of multiple sensor, user input or output devices into a single product. Unless otherwise specified, the multifunction device must meet all requirements of each component device. Where the requirements for the component devices conflict, the multifunction device must meet the most stringent of the requirements.

2.11.1 Current Sensing Relay Command Switch

The Current Sensing Relay portion must meet all requirements of the Current Sensing Relay input device. The Command Switch portion must meet all requirements of the Relay output device except that it must have at least one normally-open (NO) contact.

Current Sensing Relays used for Variable Frequency Drives must be rated for Variable Frequency applications unless installed on the source side of the drive. If used in this situation, the threshold for showing status must be set to allow for the VFD's control power when the drive is not enabled and provide indication of operation when the drive is enabled at minimum speed.

2.11.2 Space Sensor Module

Space Sensor Modules must be multifunction devices incorporating a temperature sensor and one or more of the following as specified and indicated on the Space Sensor Module Schedule:

- a. A temperature indicating device.
- b. A User Input Device which must adjust a temperature setpoint output.
- c. A User Input Momentary Contact Button and an output to the control system indicating zone occupancy.
- d. A three position User Input Switch labeled to indicate heating, cooling and off positions ('HEAT-COOL-OFF' switch) and providing corresponding outputs to the control system.
- e. A two position User Input Switch labeled with 'AUTO' and 'ON' positions and providing corresponding output to the control system..
- f. A multi-position User Input Switch with 'OFF' and at least two fan speed positions and providing corresponding outputs to the control system.

Space Sensor Modules cannot contain mercury (Hg).

3.1 INSTALLATION

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1.1 General Installation Requirements

Perform the installation under the supervision of competent technicians regularly employed in the installation of DDC systems.

3.1.1.1 Device Mounting Criteria

All devices must be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and as specified and indicated. Control devices to be installed in piping and ductwork must be provided with required gaskets, flanges, thermal compounds, insulation, piping, fittings, and manual valves for shutoff, equalization, purging, and calibration. Strap-on temperature sensing elements must not be used except as specified. Spare thermowells must be installed adjacent to each thermowell containing a sensor and as indicated. Devices located outdoors must have a weathershield.

3.1.1.2 Labels and Tags

Match labels and tags to the unique identifiers indicated on the As-Built drawings. Label all enclosures and instrumentation. Tag all sensors and actuators in mechanical rooms. Tag airflow measurement arrays to show flow rate range for signal output range, duct size, and pitot tube AFMA flow coefficient. Tag duct static pressure taps at the location of the pressure tap. Provide plastic or metal tags, mechanically attached directly to each device or attached by a metal chain or wire. Labels exterior to protective enclosures must be engraved plastic and mechanically attached to the enclosure or instrumentation. Labels inside protective enclosures may be attached using adhesive, but must not be hand written.

3.1.2 Weathershield

Provide weathershields for sensors located outdoors. Install weathershields such that they prevent the sun from directly striking the sensor and prevent rain from directly striking or dripping onto the sensor. Install weather shields with adequate ventilation so that the sensing element responds to the ambient conditions of the surroundings. When installing weathershields near outside air intake ducts, install them such that normal outside air flow does not cause rainwater to strike the sensor.

3.1.3 Room Instrument Mounting

Mount room instruments, including but not limited to wall mounted non-adjustable space sensor modules and sensors located in occupied spaces, 48 inches above the floor unless otherwise indicated. Install adjustable devices to be ADA compliant unless otherwise indicated on the Room Sensor Schedule:

- a. Space Sensor Modules for Fan Coil Units may be either unit or wall mounted but not mounted on an exterior wall.
- b. Wall mount all other Space Sensor Modules.

3.1.4 Occupancy Sensors

Provide a sufficient quantity of occupancy sensors to provide complete coverage of the area (room or space). Occupancy sensors are to be ceiling mounted. Install occupancy sensors in accordance with NFPA 70 requirements and the manufacturer's instructions. Do not locate occupancy sensors within 6 feet of HVAC outlets or heating ducts, or where they can "see" beyond any doorway.

Installation above doorway(s) is preferred. Do not use ultrasonic sensors in spaces containing ceiling fans. Install sensors to detect motion to within 2 feet of all room entrances and to not trigger due to motion outside the room. Set the off-delay timer to 15 minutes unless otherwise indicated. Adjust sensors prior to beneficial occupancy, but after installation of furniture systems, shelving, partitions, etc. For each controlled area, provide one hundred percent coverage capable of detecting small hand-motion movements, accommodating all occupancy habits of single or multiple occupants at any location within the controlled room. Switches

3.1.4.1 Temperature Limit Switch

Provide a temperature limit switch (freezestat) to sense the temperature at the location indicated. Provide a sufficient number of temperature limit switches (freezestats) to provide complete coverage of the duct section but no less than 1 foot in length per square foot of cross sectional area. Install manual reset limit switches in approved, accessible locations where they can be reset easily. Install temperature limit switch (freezestat) sensing elements in a side-to-side (not top-to-bottom) serpentine pattern with the relay section at the highest point and in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

3.1.4.2 Hand-Off Auto Switches

Wire safety controls such as smoke detectors and freeze protection thermostats to protect the equipment during both hand and auto operation.

3.1.6 Temperature Sensors

Install temperature sensors in locations that are accessible and provide a good representation of sensed media. Installations in dead spaces are not acceptable. Calibrate and install sensors according to manufacturer's instructions. Select sensors only for intended application as designated or recommended by manufacturer.

3.1.6.1 Room Temperature Sensors

Mount the sensors on interior walls to sense the average room temperature at the locations indicated. Avoid locations near heat sources such as copy machines or locations by supply air outlet drafts. Mount the center of all user-adjustable sensors 48 inches above the floor to meet ADA requirements. Non user-adjustable sensors can be mounted as indicated in paragraph ROOM INSTRUMENT MOUNTING.

3.1.6.2 Duct Temperature Sensors

3.1.6.2.1 Probe Type

Place tip of the sensor in the middle of the airstream or in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations or instructions. Provide a gasket between the sensor housing and the duct wall. Seal the duct penetration air tight. When installed in insulated duct, provide enclosure or stand off fitting to accommodate the thickness of duct insulation to allow for maintenance or replacement of the sensor and wiring terminations. Seal the duct insulation penetration vapor tight.

3.1.6.2.2 Averaging Type

Weave the sensing element in a serpentine fashion from side to side perpendicular to the flow, across the duct or air handler cross-section, using durable non-metal supports in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions. Avoid tight radius bends or kinking of the sensing element. Prevent contact between the sensing element and the duct or air handler internals. Provide a duct access door at the sensor location. The access door must be hinged on the side, factory insulated,

have cam type locks, and be as large as the duct will permit, maximum 18 by 18 inches. For sensors inside air handlers, the sensors must be fully accessible through the air handler's access doors without removing any of the air handler's internals.

3.1.6.3 Outside Air Temperature Sensors

Provide outside air temperature sensors on the building's north side with a protective weather shade that does not inhibit free air flow across the sensing element, and protects the sensor from snow, ice, and rain. Location must not be near exhaust hoods and other areas such that it is not influenced by radiation or convection sources which may affect the reading. Provide a shield to shade the

sensor from direct sunlight.

3.1.7 Air Flow Measurement Arrays (AFMA)

Locate Outside Air AFMAs downstream from the Outside Air filters.

Install AFMAs with the manufacturer's recommended minimum distances between upstream and downstream disturbances. Airflow straighteners may be used to reduce minimum distances as recommended by the AFMA manufacturer.

3.1.8 Duct Static Pressure Sensors

Locate the duct static pressure sensing tap at 75 percent of the distance between the first and last air terminal units [as indicated on the design documents]. If the transmitter output is a 0-10Vdc signal, locate the transmitter in the same enclosure as the air handling unit (AHU) controller for the AHU serving the terminal units. If a remote duct static pressure sensor is to be used, run the signal wire back to the controller for the air handling unit.

3.1.9 Relative Humidity Sensors

Install relative humidity sensors in supply air ducts at least 10 feet

3.1.10 Dampers/humidity injection elements

3.1.10.1 Damper Actuators

Provide spring return actuators which fail to a position that protects the served equipment and space on all control dampers related to freeze protection or force protection. For all outside, makeup and relief dampers provide dampers which fail closed. Do not mount actuators in the air stream. Do not connect multiple actuators to a common drive shaft. Install actuators so that their action seal the damper to the extent required to maintain leakage at or below the specified rate and so that they move the blades smoothly throughout the full range of motion.

3.1.10.2 Damper Installation

Install dampers straight and true, level in all planes, and square in all dimensions. Dampers must move freely without undue stress due to twisting, racking (parallel programming), bowing, or other installation error. External linkages must operate smoothly over the entire range of motion, without deformation or slipping of any connecting rods, joints or brackets that will prevent a return to its normal position. Blades must close completely and leakage must not exceed that specified at the rated static pressure. Provide structural support for multi-section dampers. Acceptable methods of structural support include but are not limited to U-channel, angle iron, corner angles and bolts, bent galvanized steel stiffeners, sleeve attachments, braces, and building structure. Where multi-section dampers are installed in ducts or sleeves, they must not sag due to lack of support. Do not use jackshafts to link more than three damper sections. Do not use blade to blade linkages. Install outside and return air dampers such that their blades direct their respective air streams towards each other to provide for maximum mixing of air streams.

3.1.11.1 Thermometers and Gauges

Mount devices to allow reading while standing on the floor or ground, as applicable.

3.1.12 Wire and Cable

Provide complete electrical wiring for the Control System, including wiring to transformer primaries. Wire and Cable must be installed without splices between control devices and in accordance with NFPA 70 and NFPA 90A. Instrumentation grounding must be installed per the device manufacturer's instructions and as necessary to prevent ground loops, noise, and surges from adversely affecting operation of the system. Test installed ground rods as specified in IEEE 142.

Cables and conductor wires must be tagged at both ends, with the identifier indicated on the shop drawings.

Electrical work must be as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM and as indicated. Wiring external to enclosures must be run in raceways[, except low-voltage control and low-voltage network wiring may be installed as follows:

- a. plenum rated cable in suspended ceilings over occupied spaces may be run without raceways
- b. nonmetallic-sheathed cables or metallic-armored cables may be installed as permitted by NFPA 70.]

Install control circuit wiring not in raceways in a neat and safe manner. Wiring must not use the suspended ceiling system (including tiles, frames or hangers) for support. Where conduit or raceways are required, control circuit wiring must not run in the same conduit/raceway as power wiring over 50 volts. Run all circuits over 50 volts in conduit, metallic tubing, covered metal raceways, or armored cable.

3.1.13 Copper Tubing

Provide hard-drawn copper tubing in exposed areas and either hard-drawn or annealed copper tubing in concealed areas. Use only tool-made bends. Use only brass or copper solder joint type fittings, except for connections to apparatus. For connections to apparatus use brass compression type fittings.

3.1.14 Plastic Tubing

Install plastic tubing within covered raceways or conduit except when otherwise specified. Do not use plastic tubing for applications where the tubing could be subjected to a temperature exceeding 130 degrees F. For fittings, use brass or acetal resin of the compression or barbed push-on type for instrument service. Except in walls and exposed locations, plastic multitube instrument tubing bundle without conduit or raceway protection may be used where a number of air lines run to the same points, provided the multitube bundle is enclosed in a protective sheath, is run and is adequately supported as specified.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 09 23.02

BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL
SYSTEMS
02/19, CHG 1: 02/20

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

Provide a complete Direct Digital Control (DDC) system, except for the front end which is currently existing and this project shall be interfaced to one of the two existing front ends.

1.1.1 System Requirements

- a. Except for Gateways, the control system must be an open implementation of BACnet technology using ASHRAE 135 as the communications protocol. The system must use standard ASHRAE 135 Objects and Properties. The system must use standard ASHRAE 135 Services exclusively for communication over the network. Gateways to packaged units must communicate with other DDC hardware using ASHRAE 135 exclusively and may communicate with packaged equipment using other protocols. The control system must be installed such that any two devices on the Internetwork can communicate using standard ASHRAE 135 Services.
- b. Install and configure control hardware to provide ASHRAE 135 Objects and Properties as indicated and as needed to meet the requirements of

2.1 NETWORK HARDWAREon.PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1.1 BACnet Router

All BACnet Routers must be BACnet/IP Routers and must perform layer 3 routing of ASHRAE 135 packets over an IP network in accordance with ASHRAE 135 Annex J and Clause 6. The router must provide the appropriate connection to the IP network and connections to one or more ASHRAE 135 MS/TP networks. Devices used as BACnet Routers must meet the requirements for DDC Hardware, and must support the NM-RC-B BIBB.

2.1.2 BACnet Gateways

In addition to the requirements for DDC Hardware, the BACnet Gateway must meet the following requirements:

- a. It must perform bi-directional protocol translation from one non- ASHRAE 135 protocol to ASHRAE 135. BACnet Gateways must incorporate a network connection to an ASHRAE 135 network (either BACnet over IP in accordance with Annex J or MS/TP) and a separate connection appropriate for the non-ASHRAE 135 protocol and media.
- b. It must retain its configuration after a power loss of an indefinite time, and must automatically return to their pre-power loss state once power is restored.

- c. It must allow bi-directional mapping of data between the non-ASHRAE 135 protocol and Standard Objects as defined in ASHRAE 135. It must support the DS-RP-B BIBB for Objects requiring read access and the DS-WP-B BIBB for Objects requiring write access.
- d. It must support the DS-COV-B BIBB.

Although Gateways must meet DDC Hardware requirements they are not DDC Hardware and must not be used when DDC Hardware is required.

2.1.3 Ethernet Switch

Ethernet Switches must be managed switches and must autoconfigure between 10,100 and 1000 megabits per second (MBPS).

2.2 CONTROL NETWORK WIRING

- a. BACnet MS/TP communications wiring must be in accordance with ASHRAE 135. The wiring must use shielded, three wire (twisted-pair with reference) cable with characteristic impedance between 100 and 120 ohms. Distributed capacitance between conductors must be less than 30 pF per foot.
- b. Building Control Network Backbone IP Network must use Ethernet media. Ethernet cables must be CAT-5e at a minimum and meet all requirements of IEEE 802.3 .

2.3 DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC) HARDWARE

2.3.1 General Requirements

All DDC Hardware must meet the following requirements:

- a. It must be locally powered and must incorporate a light to indicate the device is receiving power.
- b. It must conform to the BTL Guide
- e. It must communicate and be interoperable in accordance with ASHRAE 135
- h. Application programs, configuration settings and communication information must be stored in a manner such that they persist through loss of power:
 - (1) Application programs must persist regardless of the length of time power is lost.
 - (2) Configured settings must persist for any loss of power less than 2,500 hours.
 - (3) Communication information, including but not limited to COV subscriptions, event reporting destinations, Notification Class Object settings, and internal communication settings, must persist for any loss of power less than 2,500 hours.
- i. Internal Clocks:
 - (1) Clocks in DDC Hardware incorporating a Clock must continue to function for 120 hours upon loss of power to the DDC Hardware.

- (2) DDC Hardware incorporating a Clock must support the DM-TS-B or DM-UTC-B BIBB.
- j. It must have all functionality indicated and required to support the application (Sequence of Operation or portion thereof) in which it is used, including but not limited to providing Objects as specified and as indicated on the Points Schedule.
- k. In addition to these general requirements and the DDC Hardware Input-Output (I/O) Function requirements, all DDC Hardware must also meet any additional requirements for the application in which it is
- o. Devices communicating BACnet MS/TP must meet the following requirements:
 - (1) Must have a configurable Max_Master Property.
 - (2) DDC Hardware other than hardware controlling a single terminal unit must have a configurable Max_Info_Frames Property.
 - (3) Must respond to any valid request within 50 msec with either the appropriate response or with a response of "Reply Postponed".
 - (4) Must use twisted pair with reference and shield (3-wire media) wiring, or twisted pair with shield (2-wire media) wiring and use

2.3.2 Hardware Input-Output (I/O) Functions

DDC Hardware incorporating hardware input-output (I/O) functions must meet the following requirements:

2.3.2.1 Analog Inputs

DC Hardware analog inputs (AIs) must be implemented using ASHRAE 135 Analog Input Objects and perform analog to digital (A-to-D) conversion with a minimum resolution of 8 bits plus sign or better as needed to meet the accuracy requirements specified in Section 23 09 00. Signal conditioning including transient rejection must be provided for each analog input.

Analog inputs must be capable of being individually calibrated for zero and span. Calibration via software scaling performed as part of point configuration is acceptable. The AI must incorporate common mode noise rejection of at least 50 dB from 0 to 100 Hz for differential inputs, and normal mode noise rejection of at least 20 dB at 60 Hz from a source impedance of 10,000 ohms.

2.3.2.2 Analog Outputs

DDC Hardware analog outputs (AOs) must be implemented using ASHRAE 135 Analog Output Objects and perform digital to analog (D-to-A) conversion with a minimum resolution of 8 bits plus sign, and output a signal with a range of 4-20 mAdc or 0-10 Vdc. Analog outputs must be capable of being individually calibrated for zero and span. Calibration via software scaling performed as part of point configuration is acceptable. DDC Hardware with Hand-Off-Auto (H-O-A) switches for analog outputs must provide for overriding the output [to 0 percent and to 100 percent][through the range of 0 percent to 100 percent]

2.3.2.3 Binary Inputs

DDC Hardware binary inputs (BIs) must be implemented using ASHRAE 135 Binary Input Objects and accept contact closures and must ignore transients of less than 5 milli-second duration. Protection against a transient 50VAC must be provided.

2.3.2.4 Binary Outputs

DDC Hardware binary outputs (BOs) must be implemented using ASHRAE 135 Binary Output Objects and provide relay contact closures or triac outputs for momentary and maintained operation of output devices. DDC Hardware with H-O-A switches for binary outputs must provide for overriding

the output open or closed.

2.3.2.4.1 Relay Contact Closures

Closures must have a minimum duration of 0.1 second. Relays must provide at least 180V of isolation. Electromagnetic interference suppression must be provided on all output lines to limit transients to 50 Vac. Minimum contact rating must be 0.5 amperes at 24 Vac.

2.3.2.4.2 Triac Outputs

Triac outputs must provide at least 180 V of isolation. Minimum contact rating must be 0.5 amperes at 24 Vac.

2.3.2.5 Pulse Accumulator

DDC Hardware pulse accumulators must be implemented using either an ASHRAE 135 Accumulator Object or an ASHRAE 135 Analog Value Object where the Present_Value is the totalized pulse count. Pulse accumulators must accept contact closures, ignore transients less than 5 msec duration, protect against transients of 50 VAC, and accept rates of at least 20 pulses per second.

2.3.2.6 ASHRAE 135 Objects for Hardware Inputs and Outputs

The requirements for use of ASHRAE 135 objects for hardware input and outputs includes devices where the hardware sensor or actuator is integral to the controller (e.g. a VAV box with integral damper actuator, a smart sensor, a VFD, etc.)

2.3.3 Local Display Panel (LDP)

The Local Display Panels (LDPs) must be DDC Hardware with a display and navigation buttons or a touch screen display, and must provide display and adjustment of ASHRAE 135 Properties as indicated on the Points Schedule and as specified. LDPs must be either BTL Listed as a B-OD, B-OWS, B-AWS, or be an integral part of another piece of DDC Hardware listed as a B-BC. For LDPs listed as B-OWS or B-AWS, the hardware must be BTL listed and the product must come factory installed with all applications necessary for the device to function as an LDP.

The adjustment of values using display and navigation buttons must be password protected.

2.3.4 Expansion Modules and Tethered Hardware

A single piece of DDC Hardware may consist of a base unit and also:

- a. An unlimited number of hardware expansion modules, where the individual hardware expansion modules are designed to directly connect, both mechanically and electrically, to the base unit hardware. The expansion modules must be commercially available as an optional add-on to the base unit.
- b. A single piece of hardware connected (tethered) to a base unit by a single cable where the cable carries a proprietary protocol between the base unit and tethered hardware. The tethered hardware must not contain control logic and be commercially available as an optional add-on to the base unit as a single package.

Note that this restriction on tethered hardware does not apply to sensors or actuators using standard binary or analog signals (not a communications protocol); sensors or actuators using standard binary or analog signals are not considered part of the DDC Hardware.

Hardware capable of being installed stand-alone, or without a separate base unit, is DDC Hardware and must not be used as expansion modules or tethered hardware.

2.3.5 Supervisory Control Requirements

2.3.5.1 Scheduling Hardware

DDC Hardware used for scheduling must meet the following requirements:

- a. It must be BTL Listed as a B-BC and support the SCHED-E-B BIBB.
- b. It is preferred, but not required, that devices support the DM-OCD-B BIBB on all Calendar and Schedule Objects, such that a front end BTL listed as a B-AWS may create or delete Calendar and Schedule Objects. It is also preferred but not required that devices supporting the DM-OCD-B BIBB accept any valid value for properties of Calendar and Schedule Objects. Note that there are additional requirements in the EXECUTION Part of this Section for Devices which do not support the DM-OCD-B BIBB as specified.
- c. The Date_List property of all Calendar Objects must be writable.
- d. The Present_Value Property of Schedule must support the following

2.3.5.2 Trending Hardware

DDC Hardware used for collecting trend data must meet the following requirements:

- a. Device must support Trend Log or Trend Log Multiple Objects.
- b. Device must support the T-VMT-I-B BIBB.
- c. Devices provided to meet the EXECUTION requirement for support of Future Trending must support the T-VMT-E-B BIBB.
- d. The following properties of all Trend Log or Trend Log Multiple Objects must be present and Writable:
 - Start_Time Stop_Time
 - Log_DeviceObjectProperty
 - Log Interval Log interval must support an interval of at least 60 minutes duration.
- e. Trend Log Objects must support using Intrinsic Reporting to send a BUFFER_FULL event.
- f. The device must have a Notification Class Object for the BUFFER_FULL event. The Recipient_List Property must be Writable.
- g. Devices must support values of at least 1,000 for Buffer_Size Properties.
- h. It is preferred, but not required, that devices support the DM-OCD-B BIBB on all Trend Log Objects, such that a front end BTL listed as a A-AWS may create or delete Trend Log Objects. It is also preferred, but not required that devices supporting the DM-OCD-B BIBB accept any valid value as an initial value for properties of Trend Log Objects. Note that there are additional EXECUTION requirements for devices which do not support the DM-OCD-B BIBB as specified.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 CONTROL SYSTEM INSTALLATION

3.1.1 Building Control Network (BCN)

Install the Building Control Network (BCN) as a single BACnet Internetwork consisting of a single IP network as the BCN Backbone and zero or more BACnet MS/TP networks. Note that in some cases

there may only be a single device on the BCN Backbone.

Except as permitted for the non-BACnet side of Gateways, use exclusively ASHRAE 135 networks.

3.1.1.1 Building Control Network IP Backbone

Install IP Network Cabling in conduit. Install Ethernet Switches in lockable enclosures. Install the Building Control Network (BCN) IP Backbone such that it is available at the Facility Point of Connection (FPOC) location. When the FPOC location is a room number, provide sufficient additional media to ensure that the Building Control Network (BCN) IP Backbone can be extended to any location in the room.

Use UDP port 0xBAC0 for all BACnet traffic on the IP network.

3.1.1.2 BACnet MS/TP Networks

When using MS/TP, provide MS/TP networks in accordance with ASHRAE 135 and in accordance with the ASHRAE 135 figure "Mixed Devices on 3-Conductor Cable with Shield" (Figure 9-1.4 in the 2012 version of ASHRAE 135).

Ground the shield at the BACnet Router and at no other point. Ground the reference wire at the BACnet Router through a 100 ohm resistor and do not ground it at any other point. In addition:

- a. Provide each segment in a doubly terminated bus topology in accordance with TIA-485.
- b. Provide each segment with 2 sets of network bias resistors in accordance with ASHRAE 135, with one set of resistors at each end of the MS/TP network.
- c. Use 3 wire (twisted pair and reference) with shield media for all MS/TP media installed inside. Use fiber optic isolation in accordance with ASHRAE 135 for all MS/TP media installed outside buildings, or between multiple buildings.
- d. For 18 AWG cable, use segments with a maximum length of 4000 ft. When using greater distances or different wire gauges comply with the electrical specifications of TIA-485.
- e. For each controller that does not use the reference wire provide transient suppression at the network connection of the controller if the controller itself does not incorporate transient suppression.
- f. Install no more than 32 devices on each MS/TP segment. Do not use MS/TP to MS/TP routers.
- g. Connect each MS/TP network to the BCN backbone via a BACnet Router.
- h. For BACnet Routers, configure the MS/TP MAC address to 0. Assign MAC Addresses to other devices consecutively beginning at 1, with no gaps.
- i. Configure the Max_Master Property of all devices to be 31.

3.1.1.3 Building Control Network (BCN) Installation

Provide a building control network meeting the following requirements:

- a. Install all DDC Hardware connected to the Building Control Network.
- b. Where multiple pieces of DDC Hardware are used to execute one sequence, install all DDC Hardware executing that sequence on a single MS/TP network dedicated to that sequence.
- c. Traffic between BACnet networks must be exclusively via BACnet routers.

3.1.2 DDC Hardware

Install all DDC Hardware that connects to an IP network in lockable enclosure. Install other DDC Hardware that is not in suspended ceilings in [lockable] enclosures. For all DDC hardware with a user interface, coordinate with site to determine proper passwords and configure passwords into device.

- a. Except for zone sensors (thermostats), install all Tethered Hardware within 6 feet of its base unit.
- b. Install and configure all BTL-Listed devices in a manner consistent with their BTL Listing such that the device as provided still meets all requirements necessary for its BTL Listing.
- c. Install and configure all BTL-Listed devices in a manner consistent with the BTL Device Implementation Guidelines such that the device as provided meets all those Guidelines.

3.1.2.1 Device Identifiers, Network Addresses, and IP addresses

- a. Do not use any Device Identifier or Network Number already used by

3.1.2.2 Local Display Panels the project site.

Provide LDPs to display and override values of ASHRAE 135 Object Properties as indicated on the Points Schedule. Install LDPs displaying points for anything other than a terminal unit in the same room as the equipment.

Install LDPs displaying points for only terminal units [in a mechanical room central to the group of terminal units it serves][_____]. For LDPs using WriteProperty to commandable objects to implement an override, write values with priority 9.

3.1.2.3 MS/TP Slave Devices

Configure all MS/TP devices as Master devices. Do not configure any devices to act as slave devices.

3.1.2.4 Change of Value (COV) and Read Property

- a. To the greatest extent possible, configure all devices to support the SubscribeCOV service (the DS-COV-B BIBB). At a minimum, all devices supporting the DS-RP-B BIBB, other than devices controlling only a single terminal unit, must be configured to support the DS-COV-B BIBB.
- b. Whenever supported by the server side, configure client devices to use the DS-COV-A BIBB.

3 j. Electrical Power: kilowatts (kW)

3.1.2.5 Engineering Units

Configure devices to use English (Inch-Pound) engineering units as follows:

- a. Temperature in degrees F
- e. Differential Air pressures in inches of water column (IWC)
- f. Water, steam, and natural gas pressures in PSI
- g. Enthalpy in BTU/lb
- h. Heating and cooling energy in MBTU (1MBTU = 1,000,000 BTU)

- i. Cooling load in tons (1 ton = 12,000 BTU/hour)
- j. Heating load in MBTU/hour (1MBTU = 1,000,000 BTU)
- k. Electrical Power: kilowatts (kW)
- l. Electrical Energy: kilowatt-hours (kWh)]

3.1.2.6 Occupancy Modes

Use the following correspondence between value and occupancy mode whenever an occupancy state or value is required:

- a. OCCUPIED mode: a value of one
- b. UNOCCUPIED mode: a value of two
- c. WARM-UP/COOL-DOWN (PRE-OCCUPANCY) mode: a value of three

Note that elsewhere in this Section the Schedule Object is required to also support a value of four, which is reserved for future use. Also note that the behavior of a system in each of these occupancy modes is indicated in the sequence of operation for the system.

3.1.2.7 Use of BACnet Objects

Use only standard non-proprietary ASHRAE 135 Objects and services to accomplish the project scope of work as follows:

- a. Use Analog Input or Analog Output Objects for all analog hardware I/O. Do not use Analog Value Object for analog hardware I/O).
- b. Use Binary Input or Binary Output Objects for all binary hardware I/O. Do not use Binary Value Objects for binary hardware I/O.
- c. Use Analog Value Objects for analog setpoints.
- d. Use Accumulator Objects or Analog Value Objects for pulse inputs.
- e. For occupancy modes, use Multistate Value Objects and the correspondence between value and occupancy mode specified in paragraph OCCUPANCY MODES.
- f. Use Schedule Objects and Calendar Objects for all scheduling. Use Trend Log Objects or Trend Log Multiple Objects for all trending and Notification Class Objects for trend log upload. Use a combination of Event Enrollment Objects, Intrinsic Alarming, and Notification Class Objects for alarm generation.
- g. For all other points shown on the Points Schedule as requiring an ASHRAE 135 Object, use the Object type shown on the Points Schedule or, if no Object Type is shown, use a standard Object appropriate to the point.

3.1.2.8 Use of Standard BACnet Services

Except as noted in this paragraph, for all DDC Hardware use Standard BACnet Services as defined in this specification (which excludes some ASHRAE 135 services) exclusively for application control functionality and communication.

DDC Hardware that cannot meet this requirement may use non-standard services provided they can provide identical functionality using Standard BACnet Services when communicating with BACnet devices from a different vendor. When implementing non-standard services, document all non-standard services in the DDC Hardware Schedule as specified and as specified in Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC.

3.1.2.9 Device Application Configuration

- a. For every property, setting or value shown on the Points Schedule or otherwise indicated as Configurable, provide a value that is retained through loss of power and can be changed via one or more of:
 - (1) BACnet services (including proprietary services)
 - (2) Hardware settings on the device

- b. For every property, setting or value shown on the Points Schedule or otherwise indicated as Operator Configurable, provide a value that is retained through loss of power and can be changed via one or more of:
 - (1) A Writable Property of a standard BACnet Object
 - (2) A Property of a standard BACnet Object that is Writable when Out_Of_Service is TRUE and Out_Of_Service is Writable.

3.1.3 Scheduling, Alarming, Trending, and Overrides

3.1.3.1 Scheduling

Configure schedules in BACnet Scheduling Objects to schedule systems as indicated on the Points Schedule and as specified using the indicated correspondence between value and occupancy mode.

Provide a separate schedule for each AHU including it's associated Terminal Units and for each stand-alone Terminal Unit (those not dependent upon AHU service).

3.1.3.2 Configuration of Alarm Generation

- a. Send alarm events as Alarms (not Events).
- b. Use the Confirmed Notification Service for alarm events.
- c. For alarm generation, support two priority levels for alarms: critical and non-critical.
Configure the Priority of Notification Class Objects to use Priority 112 for critical and 224 for non-critical alarms.
- d. Number of Notification Class Objects for Alarm Generation:
 - (1) If the device implements non-critical alarms, or if any Object in the device supports Intrinsic Alarms, then provide a single Notification Class Object specifically for (shared by) all non-critical alarms.
 - (2) If the device implements critical alarms, provide a single Notification Class Object specifically for (shared by) all critical alarms.
 - (3) If the device implements both critical and non-critical alarms, provide both Notification Class Objects (one for critical, one for non-critical).
 - (4) If the device controls equipment other than a single terminal unit, provide both Notification Class Objects (one for critical, one for non-critical) even if no alarm generation is required at time of installation.
- e. For all intrinsic alarms configure the Limit Enable Property to set both High Limit Enable and Low Limit Enable to TRUE. If the specified alarm conditions are for a single-sided alarm (only High_Limit used or only Low_Limit used) assign a value to the unused limit such that the unused alarm condition will not occur.
- f. For all objects supporting intrinsic alarming, even if no alarm generation is required during installation, configure the following Properties as follows:
 - (1) Notification_Class to point to the non-Critical Notification Class Object in that device.

- (2) Limit_Enable to enable both the HighLimitEnable and LowLimitEnable
- (3) Notify_Type to Alarm

g. Use of alarm generation types:

- (1) Only use algorithmic alarm generation when intrinsic alarm generation is not supported by the device or object, or when the specific alarm conditions cannot be implemented using intrinsic alarm generation.
- (2) Only use remote alarm generation when the alarm cannot be generated using intrinsic or local algorithmic alarm generation on the device containing the referenced property. If remote alarm generation is used, use the same DDC Hardware for all remote alarm generation within a single sequence.

3.1.3.3 Support for Future Alarm Generation

For every piece of DDC Hardware, support future alarm generation capabilities by supporting either intrinsic or additional algorithmic alarming. Provide one of the following:

- a. Support intrinsic alarming for every Object used by the application in that device.
- b. Support additional Event_Enrollment Objects. For DDC hardware controlling a single terminal unit, support at least one additional object. Otherwise, support at least [4][_____] additional Objects. Support additional Event_Enrollment Objects via one of the following:
 - (1) Provide unused Event_Enrollment Objects on that device.
 - (2) Support the DM-OCD-B BIBB and the creation of sufficient Event_Enrollment Objects on that device.
 - (3) Provide one or more devices in the IP network that support the AE-N-E-B BIBB and have unused Event_Enrollment Objects.
 - (4) Provide one or more devices on the IP network that support the AE-N-E-B BIBB, the DM-OCD-B BIBB, and the creation of sufficient Event_Enrollment Objects.

The total number of Event_Enrollment Objects required by the project is the sum of the individual device requirements, and the distribution of Event_Enrollment Objects among devices is not further restricted. (Note this allows a single device to contain many Event_Enrollment Objects satisfying the requirements for multiple devices.)

3.1.3.4 Trend Log Configuration

- a. Configure trends in Trend Log or Trend Log Multiple Objects as indicated on the Points Schedule and as specified.
- b. Configure all trend logs (including any provided to support future trends) to save data on regular intervals using the BUFFER_FULL event to request trend upload from the front end.
- c. Configure Trend Log Objects with a minimum Buffer_Size property value of 1,000 and Trend Log Multiple Objects with a minimum Buffer_Size property value of 1,000 per point trended (for example, a Trend Log Multiple Object used to trend 3 points must have a Buffer_Size Property value of at least 3,000).

- d. Configure a Notification Class Object in devices doing trending (including devices supporting future trends) to handle the BUFFER_FULL event.
- e. When possible, trend each point using an Object in the device containing the point. When it is necessary to trend using an Object in another device, all trends not on the same Device as the Object being trended must be on a single device (i.e. all Trend Log and Trend Log Multiple Objects used for remote trending within a sequence must be on the same device).
- f. For each trend log, including any trend logs provided to support future trending, configure the following properties as specified:
 - (1) Logging_Type: Set to Polling
 - (2) Stop_When_Full: Set to Wrap Around
 - (3) Buffer_Size: Set to 400 or greater.
 - (4) Notification_Threshold: Set to 90 percent of full
 - (5) Notification_Class: Set to the Notification Class Object in that device
 - (6) Event_Enable: Set to TRUE

3.1.3.5 Overrides Interval: Set to 15 minutes.

Provide an override for each point shown on the Points Schedule as requiring an override.

Unless otherwise approved, provide Commandable Objects to support all Overrides. With specific approval from the Contracting Officer, Overrides for points which are not hardware outputs and which are in DDC hardware controlling a single terminal unit may support overrides via an additional Object provided for the override. No other means of implementing Overrides may be used.

- a. Where Commandable Objects are used, ensure that WriteProperty service requests with a Priority of 10 or less take precedence over the SEQUENCE VALUE and that WriteProperty service request with a priority of 11 or more have a lower precedence than the SEQUENCE VALUE.
- b. For devices implementing overrides via additional Objects, provide Objects which are NOT Written to as part of the normal Sequence of Operations and are Writable when Out_Of_Service is TRUE and Out_Of_Service is Writable. Use this point as an Override of the normal value when Out_Of_Service is TRUE and the normal value otherwise. Note these Objects may be modified as part of the sequence via local processes, but must not be modified by local processes when Out_Of_Service is TRUE.

3.1.4 BACnet Gateways

The requirements in this paragraph do not themselves permit the installation of hardware not meeting the other requirements of this section. Except for proprietary systems specifically indicated in Section 23 09 00, all control hardware installed under this project must meet the requirements of this specification, including the control hardware providing the network interface for a package unit or split system specified under another section. Only use gateways to connect to pre-existing control devices, and to proprietary systems specifically permitted by Section 23 09 00.

3.1.4.1 General Gateway Requirements

Provide BACnet Gateways to connect non-BACnet control hardware in accordance with the following:

- a. Configure gateways to map writable data points in the controlled equipment to Writable

Properties of Standard Objects as indicated in the Points Schedule and as specified.

- b. Configure gateway to map readable data points in the controlled equipment to Readable Properties of Standard Objects as indicated in the Points Schedule and as specified.
- c. Configure gateway to support the DS-COV-B BIBB for all points mapped to BACnet Objects.
- d. Do not use non-BACnet control hardware for controlling built-up units or any other equipment that was not furnished with factory-installed controls.
- e. Do not use non-BACnet control hardware for system scheduling functions.
- f. Each gateway must communicate with and perform protocol translation for non-BACnet control hardware controlling one and only one package unit or a single non-BACnet system specifically permitted by Section 23 09 00.
- g. Connect one network port on the gateway to the Building Control Backbone IP Network or to a BACnet MS/TP network and the other port to the single piece of controlled equipment or the non-BACnet system specifically permitted by Section 23 09 00..
- h. For gateways to existing package units or simple split systems, non-BACnet network wiring connecting the gateway to the package unit must not exceed 10 feet in length and must connect to exactly two devices: the controlled equipment (packaged unit) or split system interface and the gateway.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 30 00

HVAC AIR DISTRIBUTION
05/20, CHG 1: 02/22

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ACOUSTICAL SOCIETY OF AMERICA (ASA)

ASA S12.51 (2012; R 2017) American National Standard Acoustics
- Determination of Sound Power Levels and Sound
Energy Levels of Noise Sources using Sound Pressure
- Precision Methods for Reverberation Test Rooms

AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS OF AMERICA (ACCA)

ACCA Manual 4 (2001) Installation Techniques for Perimeter Heating and
Cooling; 11th Edition

AIR MOVEMENT AND CONTROL ASSOCIATION INTERNATIONAL, INC. (AMCA)

AMCA 201 (2002; R 2011) Fans and Systems
AMCA 210 (2016) Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for
Aerodynamic Performance Rating
AMCA 220 (2005;R 2012) Test Methods for Air Curtain Units
AMCA 300 (2014) Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing
of Fans
AMCA 301 (2014) Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings
from Laboratory Test Data
AMCA 500-D (2018) Laboratory Methods of Testing Dampers
for Rating

AIR-CONDITIONING, HEATING AND REFRIGERATION INSTITUTE (AHRI)

AHRI 260 I-P (2012) Sound Rating of Ducted Air Moving and
Conditioning Equipment
AHRI 350 (2015) Sound Rating of Non-Ducted Indoor Air-
Conditioning Equipment
AHRI 410 (2001; Addendum 1 2002; Addendum 2 2005;
Addendum 3 2011) Forced-Circulation

Air-Cooling and Air-Heating Coils

AHRI 430	(2009) Central-Station Air-Handling Units
AHRI 440	(2008) Performance Rating of Room Fan-Coils
AHRI 880 I-P	(2011) Performance Rating of Air Terminals
AHRI 885	(2008; Addendum 2011) Procedure for Estimating Occupied Space Sound Levels in the Application of Air Terminals and Air Outlets
AHRI DCAACP	(Online) Directory of Certified Applied Air-Conditioning Products
AHRI Guideline D	(1996) Application and Installation of Central Station Air-Handling Units

AMERICAN BEARING MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (ABMA)

ABMA 9	(2015) Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for Ball Bearings
ABMA 11	(2014) Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for Roller Bearings

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 15 & 34	(2013) ASHRAE Standard 34-2016 Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems/ASHRAE Standard 34-2016 Designation and Safety Classification of Refrigerants-ASHRAE Standard 34-2016
ASHRAE 52.2	(2017) Method of Testing General Ventilation Air-Cleaning Devices for Removal Efficiency by Particle Size
ASHRAE 62.1	(2019; ADD A-G 2021; Errata 3 2021) Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality
ASHRAE 68	(1997) Laboratory Method of Testing to Determine the Sound Power In a Duct
ASHRAE 70	(2006; R 2021) Method of Testing the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets
ASHRAE 84	(2020; Errata 2021) Method of Testing Air-to-Air Heat/Energy Exchangers
ASHRAE 90.1 - IP	(2013) Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings
ASHRAE 90.1 - SI	(2013) Energy Standard for Buildings

Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings AMERICAN

SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME A13.1 (2020) Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A53/A53M (2020) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless

ASTM A123/A123M (2017) Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products

ASTM A167 (2011) Standard Specification for Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip

ASTM A924/A924M (2020) Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process

ASTM B75/B75M (2020) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube

ASTM B117 (2019) Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus

ASTM B152/B152M (2019) Standard Specification for Copper Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Rolled Bar

ASTM B209 (2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate

ASTM B209M (2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate (Metric)

ASTM B280 (2020) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Field Service

ASTM B766 (1986; R 2015) Standard Specification for Electrodeposited Coatings of Cadmium

ASTM C553 (2013; R 2019) Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Commercial and Industrial Applications

ASTM C916 (2020) Standard Specification for Adhesives for Duct Thermal Insulation

ASTM C1071 (2019) Standard Specification for Fibrous Glass Duct Lining Insulation (Thermal and

	Sound Absorbing Material)
ASTM D520	(2000; R 2011) Zinc Dust Pigment
ASTM D1654	(2008; R 2016; E 2017) Standard Test Method for Evaluation of Painted or Coated Specimens Subjected to Corrosive Environments
ASTM D1785	(2015; E 2018) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC), Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40, 80, and 120
ASTM D2466	(2017) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40
ASTM D2564	(2020) Standard Specification for Solvent Cements for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Piping Systems
ASTM D2855	(2015) Standard Practice for Making Solvent-Cemented Joints with Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pipe and Fittings
ASTM D3359	(2017) Standard Test Methods for Rating Adhesion by Tape Test
ASTM E84	(2020) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
ASTM E2016	(2020) Standard Specification for Industrial Woven Wire Cloth

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH (CDPH)

CDPH SECTION 01350	(2010; Version 1.1) Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources using Environmental Chambers
--------------------	--

GERMAN INSTITUTE FOR STANDARDIZATION (DIN)

DIN EN 14037	(2016) Free Hanging Heating and Cooling Surfaces for Water with a Temperature Below 120 Degrees C - Part 1: Pre-Fabricated Ceiling Mounted Radiant Panels for Space Heating
DIN EN 14240	(2004) Ventilation for Buildings INSTITUTE

OF ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCES AND TECHNOLOGY (IEST)

IEST RP-CC-001	(2016; Rev 6) HEPA and ULPA Filters
----------------	-------------------------------------

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA ICS 6	(1993; R 2016) Industrial Control and Systems: Enclosures
NEMA MG 1	(2018) Motors and Generators
NEMA MG 10	(2017) Energy Management Guide for Selection and Use of Fixed Frequency Medium AC Squirrel-Cage Polyphase Induction Motors
NEMA MG 11	(1977; R 2012) Energy Management Guide for Selection and Use of Single Phase Motors

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70	(2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2 2020; TIA 20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA 20-3; TIA 20-4) National Electrical Code
NFPA 90A	(2021) Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems
NFPA 96	(2021) Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations
NFPA 701	(2019) Standard Methods of Fire Tests for Flame Propagation of Textiles and Films

SHEET METAL AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS' NATIONAL ASSOCIATION
(SMACNA)

SMACNA 1403	(2008) Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction, 2nd Edition
SMACNA 1819	(2002) Fire, Smoke and Radiation Damper Installation Guide for HVAC Systems, 5th Edition
SMACNA 1884	(2003) Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards, 7th Edition
SMACNA 1966	(2020) HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible, 4th Edition
SMACNA 1972 CD	(2012) HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual - 2nd Edition
SMACNA 1981	(2008) Seismic Restraint Manual Guidelines for Mechanical Systems, 3rd Edition

SOUTH COAST AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT DISTRICT (SCAQMD)

SCAQMD Rule 1168	(2017) Adhesive and Sealant Applications
------------------	--

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

MIL-STD-101 (2014; Rev C) Color Code for Pipelines and for Compressed Gas Cylinders

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY FEDERAL ENERGY MANAGEMENT PROGRAM

(FEMP) PL-109-58 (1992; R 2005) Energy Efficient Procurement Requirements

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

40 CFR 82 Protection of Stratospheric Ozone UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 6 (2007; Reprint Sep 2019) UL Standard for Safety Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit-Steel

UL 94 (2013; Reprint May 2021) UL Standard for Safety Tests for Flammability of Plastic Materials for Parts in Devices and Appliances

UL 181 (2013; Reprint Apr 2017) UL Standard for Safety Factory-Made Air Ducts and Air Connectors

UL 555 (2006; Reprint Aug 2016) UL Standard for Safety Fire Dampers

UL 555S (2014; Reprint Oct 2020) UL Standard for Safety Smoke Dampers

UL 586 (2009; Reprint Dec 2017) UL Standard for Safety High-Efficiency Particulate, Air Filter Units

UL 705 (2017; Reprint Aug 2021) UL Standard for Safety Power Ventilators

UL 723 (2018) UL Standard for Safety Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials

UL 900 (2015) Standard for Air Filter Units

UL 1995 (2015) UL Standard for Safety Heating and Cooling Equipment

UL 2021 (2015; Reprint Dec 2016) UL Standard for Safety Fixed and Location-Dedicated Electric Room Heaters

UL Bld Mat Dir (updated continuously online) Building Materials Directory

UL Electrical Construction (2012) Electrical Construction Equipment Directory

UL Fire Resistance

(2014) Fire Resistance Directory

1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Furnish ductwork, piping offsets, fittings, and accessories as required to provide a complete installation. Coordinate the work of the different trades to avoid interference between piping, equipment, structural, and electrical work. Provide complete, in place, all necessary offsets in piping and ductwork, and all fittings, and other components, required to install the work as indicated and specified.

1.2.1 Mechanical Equipment Identification

The number of charts and diagrams must be equal to or greater than the number of mechanical equipment rooms. Where more than one chart or diagram per space is required, mount these in edge pivoted, swinging leaf, extruded aluminum frame holders which open to 170 degrees.

1.2.1.1 Charts

Provide chart listing of equipment by designation numbers and capacities such as flow rates, pressure and temperature differences, heating and cooling capacities, horsepower, pipe sizes, and voltage and current characteristics.

1.2.2 Service Labeling

Label equipment, including fans, air handlers, terminal units, etc. with labels made of self-sticking, plastic film designed for permanent installation. Provide labels in accordance with the typical examples below:

SERVICE	LABEL AND TAG DESIGNATION
Air handling unit Number	AHU - []
Control and instrument air	CONTROL AND INSTR.
Exhaust Fan Number	EF - []
VAV Box Number	VAV - []
Fan Coil Unit Number	FC - []
Terminal Box Number	TB - []
Unit Ventilator Number	UV - []

Identify similar services with different temperatures or pressures. Where pressures could exceed 125 pounds per square inch, gage, include the maximum system pressure in the label. Label and arrow piping in accordance with the following:

- a. Each point of entry and exit of pipe passing through walls.
- b. Each change in direction, i.e., elbows, tees.
- c. In congested or hidden areas and at all access panels at each point required to clarify service or indicated hazard.
- d. In long straight runs, locate labels at distances within eyesight of each other not to exceed 75 feet. All labels must be visible and legible from the primary service and operating area.

For Bare or Insulated Pipes	
for Outside Diameters of	Lettering
1/2 thru 1-3/8 inch	1/2 inch
1-1/2 thru 2-3/8 inch	3/4 inch
2-1/2 inch and larger	1-1/4 inch

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submit the following in accordance with The Statement of Work:

SD-02 Shop Drawings Detail

Drawings; G

SD-03 Product Data

Insulated Nonmetallic Flexible Duct Runouts Duct Connectors

Duct Access Doors; G Fire

Dampers

Manual Balancing Dampers; G

Acoustical Duct Liner

Diffusers

Registers and Grilles Louvers

Panel Type Power Wall Ventilators

Ceiling Exhaust Fans

PL-109-58 label for ceiling exhaust fan product; S

Reheat Units; G

Energy Recovery Devices; G

SD-06 Test Reports Performance Tests; G

Damper Acceptance Test; G

SD-07 Certificates Bolts

Ozone Depleting Substances Technician Certification SD-08 Manufacturer's

Instructions

Manufacturer's Installation Instructions Operation and Maintenance

Training

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data Operation and

Maintenance Manuals; G Fire Dampers; G

Manual Balancing Dampers; G

Panel Type Power Wall Ventilators; G

Ceiling Exhaust Fans; G

Energy Recovery Devices; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Indoor Air Quality During Construction; S

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Except as otherwise specified, approval of materials and equipment is based on manufacturer's published data.

- a. Where materials and equipment are specified to conform to the standards of the Underwriters Laboratories, the label of or listing with reexamination in UL Bld Mat Dir, and UL 6 is acceptable as sufficient evidence that the items conform to Underwriters Laboratories requirements. In lieu of such label or listing, submit a written certificate from any nationally recognized testing agency, adequately equipped and competent to perform such services, stating that the items have been tested and that the units conform to the specified requirements. Outline methods of testing used by the specified agencies.
- b. Where materials or equipment are specified to be constructed or tested, or both, in accordance with the standards of the ASTM International (ASTM), the ASME International (ASME), or other standards, a manufacturer's certificate of compliance of each item is acceptable as proof of compliance.
- c. Conformance to such agency requirements does not relieve the item from compliance with other requirements of these specifications.

- d. Where products are specified to meet or exceed the specified energy efficiency requirement of FEMP-designated or ENERGY STAR covered product categories, equipment selected must have as a minimum the efficiency rating identified under "Energy-Efficient Products" at <http://femp.energy.gov/procurement>. [Equipment having a lower efficiency may be specified if the designer determines such equipment to be more life-cycle cost effective.]

1.4.1 Prevention of Corrosion

Protect metallic materials against corrosion. Provide rust-inhibiting treatment and standard finish for the equipment enclosures. Do not use aluminum in contact with earth, and where connected to dissimilar metal. Protect aluminum by approved fittings, barrier material, or treatment. Provide hot-dip galvanized ferrous parts such as anchors, bolts, braces, boxes, bodies, clamps, fittings, guards, nuts, pins, rods, shims, thimbles, washers, and miscellaneous parts not of corrosion-resistant steel or nonferrous materials in accordance with ASTM A123/A123M for exterior locations and cadmium-plated in conformance with ASTM B766 for interior locations.

1.4.2 Asbestos Prohibition

Do not use asbestos and asbestos-containing products.

1.4.3 Ozone Depleting Substances Technician Certification

All technicians working on equipment that contain ozone depleting refrigerants must be certified as a Section 608 Technician to meet requirements in 40 CFR 82, Subpart F. Provide copies of technician certifications to the Contracting Officer at least 14 calendar days prior to work on any equipment containing these refrigerants.

1.4.4 Detail Drawings

Submit detail drawings showing equipment layout, including assembly and installation details and electrical connection diagrams; ductwork layout showing the location of all supports and hangers, typical hanger details, gauge reinforcement, reinforcement spacing rigidity classification, and static pressure and seal classifications. Include any information required to demonstrate that the system has been coordinated and functions properly as a unit on the drawings and show equipment relationship to other parts of the work, including clearances required for operation and maintenance. Submit drawings showing bolt-setting information, and foundation bolts prior to concrete foundation construction for all equipment indicated or required to have concrete foundations. Submit function designation of the equipment and any other requirements specified throughout this Section with the shop drawings.

1.4.5 Test Procedures

Conduct performance tests as required in Section 23 05 93 Testing, Adjusting and Balancing for HVAC and Section 23 09 00 Instrumentation and Control for HVAC.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Protect stored equipment at the jobsite from the weather, humidity and temperature variations, dirt and dust, or other contaminants.
Additionally, cap or plug all pipes until installed.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 STANDARD PRODUCTS

Provide components and equipment that are "standard products" of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacturing of products that are of a similar material, design and workmanship. "Standard products" is defined as being in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years before bid opening, including applications of components and equipment under similar circumstances and of

similar size, satisfactorily completed by a product that is sold on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures. Products having less than a 2-year field service record are acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation, for not less than 6000 hours exclusive of the manufacturer's factory tests, can be shown. Provide equipment items that are supported by a service organization. In product categories covered by ENERGY STAR or the Federal Energy Management Program, provide equipment that is listed on the ENERGY STAR Qualified Products List or that meets or exceeds the FEMP-designated Efficiency Requirements.

2.2 IDENTIFICATION PLATES

In addition to standard manufacturer's identification plates, provide engraved laminated phenolic identification plates for each piece of mechanical equipment. Identification plates are to designate the function of the equipment. Submit designation with the shop drawings. Provide identification plates that are layers, black-white-black, engraved to show white letters on black background. Letters must be upper case. Identification plates that are 1-1/2-inches high and smaller must be 1/16-inch thick, with engraved lettering 1/8-inch high; identification plates larger than 1-1/2-inches high must be 1/8-inch thick, with engraved lettering of suitable height. Identification plates 1-1/2-inches high and larger must have beveled edges. Install identification plates using a compatible adhesive.

2.3 EQUIPMENT GUARDS AND ACCESS

Fully enclose or guard belts, pulleys, chains, gears, couplings, projecting setscrews, keys, and other rotating parts exposed to personnel contact according to OSHA requirements. Properly guard or cover with insulation of a type specified, high temperature equipment and piping exposed to contact by personnel or where it creates a potential fire hazard. The requirements for catwalks, operating platforms, ladders, and guardrails are specified in Section 08 31 00 ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS.

2.4 ELECTRICAL WORK

- a. Provide motors, controllers, integral disconnects, contactors, and controls with their respective pieces of equipment, except controllers indicated as part of motor control centers. Provide electrical equipment, including motors and wiring, as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Provide manual or automatic control and protective or signal devices required for the operation specified and control wiring required for controls and devices specified, but not shown. For packaged equipment, include manufacturer provided controllers with the required monitors and timed restart.
- b. For single-phase motors, provide high-efficiency type, fractional-horsepower alternating-current motors, including motors that are part of a system, in accordance with NEMA MG 11. Provide premium efficiency type integral size motors in accordance with NEMA MG 1.
- c. For polyphase motors, provide squirrel-cage medium induction motors, including motors that are part of a system, and that meet the efficiency ratings for premium efficiency motors in accordance with NEMA MG 1. Select premium efficiency polyphase motors in accordance with NEMA MG 10.
- d. Provide motors in accordance with NEMA MG 1 and of sufficient size to drive the load at the specified capacity without exceeding the nameplate rating of the motor. Provide motors rated for continuous duty with the enclosure specified. Provide motor duty that allows for

maximum frequency start-stop operation and minimum encountered interval between start and stop. Provide motor torque capable of accelerating the connected load within 20 seconds with 80 percent of the rated voltage maintained at motor terminals during one starting period. Provide motor starters complete with thermal overload protection and other necessary appurtenances. Fit motor bearings with grease supply fittings and grease relief to outside of the enclosure.

- e. Where two-speed or variable-speed motors are indicated, solid-state variable-speed controllers are allowed to accomplish the same function. Use solid-state variable-speed controllers for motors rated 10 hp or less and adjustable frequency drives for larger motors. Provide variable frequency drives for motors as specified in Section 26 29 23 ADJUSTABLE SPEED DRIVE SYSTEMS UNDER 600 VOLTS.

2.5 ANCHOR BOLTS

Provide anchor bolts for equipment placed on concrete equipment pads or on concrete slabs. Bolts to be of the size and number recommended by the equipment manufacturer and located by means of suitable templates. Installation of anchor bolts must not degrade the surrounding concrete.

2.6 INDOOR AIR QUALITY

Provide equipment and components that comply with the requirements of ASHRAE 62.1 unless more stringent requirements are specified herein.

2.7 DUCT SYSTEMS

2.7.1 Metal Ductwork

Provide metal ductwork construction, including all fittings and components, that complies with SMACNA 1966, as supplemented and modified by this specification .

- b. Provide radius type elbows with a centerline radius of 1.5 times the width or diameter of the duct where space permits. Otherwise, elbows having a minimum radius equal to the width or diameter of the duct or square elbows with factory fabricated turning vanes are allowed.
- c. Provide ductwork that meets the requirements of Seal Class A. Provide ductwork in VAV systems upstream of the VAV boxes that meets the requirements of Seal Class A.
- e. Provide sealants that conform to fire hazard classification specified in Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS and are suitable for the range of air distribution and ambient temperatures to which it is exposed. Do not use pressure sensitive tape as a sealant. Provide duct sealant products that meet either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of SCAQMD Rule 1168 (HVAC duct sealants are classified as "Other" within the SCAQMD Rule 1168 sealants table). Provide validation of

2.7.1.1 Insulated Nonmetallic Flexible Duct Runouts

Use flexible duct runouts only where indicated. Runout length is indicated on the drawings, and is not to exceed 5 feet. Provide runouts that are preinsulated, factory fabricated, and that comply with NFPA 90A and UL 181. Provide either field or factory applied vapor barrier. Provide not less than 20 ounce glass fabric duct connectors coated on both sides with neoprene. Where coil induction or high velocity units are supplied with vertical air inlets, use a streamlined, vaned and mitered elbow transition piece for connection to the flexible duct or hose. Provide a die-stamped elbow and not a flexible connector as the last elbow to these units other than the vertical air inlet type. Insulated flexible connectors are allowed as runouts. Provide insulated material and vapor barrier that conform to the requirements of Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS. Do not expose the insulation material surface to the air stream.

2.7.1.2 General Service Duct Connectors

Provide a flexible duct connector approximately 6 inches in width where sheet metal connections are made to fans or where ducts of dissimilar metals are connected. For round/oval ducts, secure the flexible material by stainless steel or zinc-coated, iron clinch-type draw bands. For rectangular ducts, install the flexible material locked to metal collars using normal duct construction methods. Provide a composite connector system that complies with NFPA 701 and is classified as "flame-retardent fabrics" in UL Bld Mat Dir.

2.7.1.3 Copper Sheets

ASTM B152/B152M, light cold rolled temper.

2.7.2 Duct Access Doors

Provide hinged access doors conforming to SMACNA 1966 in ductwork and plenums where indicated and at all air flow measuring primaries, automatic dampers, fire dampers, coils, thermostats, and other apparatus requiring service and inspection in the duct system. Provide access doors upstream and downstream of air flow measuring primaries and heating and cooling coils. Provide doors that are a minimum 15 by 18 inches, unless otherwise shown. Where duct size does not accommodate this size door, make the doors as large as practicable. Equip doors 24 by 24 inches or larger with fasteners operable from inside and outside the duct. Use insulated type doors in insulated ducts.

2.7.3 Fire Dampers

Use 1.5 hour rated fire dampers unless otherwise indicated. Provide fire dampers that conform to the requirements of NFPA 90A and UL 555. Perform the fire damper test as outlined in NFPA 90A. Provide a pressure relief door upstream of the fire damper. If the ductwork connected to the fire damper is to be insulated then provide a factory installed pressure relief damper. Provide automatic operating fire dampers with a dynamic rating suitable for the maximum air velocity and pressure differential to which it is subjected. Provide fire dampers approved for the specific application, and install according to their listing. Equip fire dampers with a steel sleeve or adequately sized frame installed in such a manner that disruption of the attached ductwork, if any, does not impair the operation of the damper. Equip sleeves or frames with perimeter mounting angles attached on both sides of the wall or floor opening. Construct ductwork in fire-rated floor-ceiling or roof-ceiling assembly systems with air ducts that pierce the ceiling of the assemblies in conformance with UL Fire Resistance. Provide curtain type with damper blades out of the air stream fire dampers. Install dampers that do not reduce the duct or the air transfer opening cross-sectional area. Install dampers so that the centerline of the damper depth or thickness is located in the centerline of the wall, partition or floor slab depth or thickness. Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the installation details given in SMACNA 1819 and in manufacturer's instructions for fire dampers. Perform acceptance testing of fire dampers according to paragraph Fire Damper Acceptance Test and NFPA 90A.

2.7.4 Manual Balancing Dampers

Furnish manual balancing dampers with accessible operating mechanisms. Use chromium plated operators (with all exposed edges rounded) in finished portions of the building. Provide manual volume control dampers that are operated by locking-type quadrant operators. Install dampers that are 2 gauges heavier than the duct in which installed. Unless otherwise indicated, provide opposed blade type multileaf dampers with maximum blade width of 12 inches. Provide access doors or panels for all concealed damper operators and locking setscrews. Provide stand-off mounting brackets, bases, or adapters not less than the thickness of the insulation when the locking-type quadrant operators for dampers are installed on ducts to be thermally insulated, to provide clearance between the duct surface and the operator. Provide stand-off mounting items that are integral with the operator or standard accessory of the damper manufacturer.

2.7.5 Air Supply And Exhaust Air Dampers

Provide outdoor air supply and exhaust air dampers that have a maximum leakage rate when tested in accordance with AMCA 500-D as required by ASHRAE 90.1 - IP, including maximum Damper Leakage for:

- a. Climate Zones 1,2,6,7,8 the maximum damper leakage at 1.0 inch w.g. for motorized dampers is 4 cfm per square foot of damper area and non-motorized dampers are not allowed.
- b. All other Climate Zones the maximum damper leakage at 1.0 inch w.g. is 10 cfm per square foot and for non-motorized dampers is 20 cfm per square foot of damper area.

Dampers smaller than 24 inches in either direction may have leakage of 40 cfm per square foot.

2.7.6 Air Deflectors (Volume Extractors) and Branch Connections Provide air deflectors

(volume extractors) at all duct mounted supply outlets, at takeoff or extension collars to supply outlets, at duct branch takeoff connections, and at 90 degree elbows, as well as at locations as indicated on the drawings or otherwise specified. Conical branch connections or 45 degree entry connections are allowed in lieu of deflectors for branch connections. Furnish all air deflectors (volume extractors), except those installed in 90 degree elbows, with an approved means of adjustment. Provide easily accessible means for adjustment inside the duct or from an adjustment with sturdy lock on the face of the duct.

When installed on ducts to be thermally insulated, provide external adjustments with stand-off mounting brackets, integral with the adjustment device, to provide clearance between the duct surface and the adjustment device not less than the thickness of the thermal insulation. Provide factory-fabricated air deflectors consisting of curved turning vanes or louver blades designed to provide uniform air distribution and change of direction with minimum turbulence or pressure loss. Provide factory or field assembled air deflectors (volume extractors). Make adjustment from the face of the diffuser or by position adjustment and lock external to the duct. Provide stand-off brackets on insulated ducts as described herein.

Provide fixed air deflectors (volume extractors), also called turning vanes, in 90 degree elbows.

2.7.7 Plenums and Casings for Field-Fabricated Units

2.7.7.1 Plenum and Casings

Fabricate and erect plenums and casings as shown in SMACNA 1966, as applicable. Construct system casing of not less than 16 gauge galvanized sheet steel. Furnish cooling coil drain pans with 1 inch threaded outlet to collect condensation from the cooling coils. Fabricate drain pans from not lighter than 16 gauge steel, galvanized after fabrication or of 18 gauge corrosion-resisting sheet steel conforming to ASTM A167, Type 304, welded and stiffened. Thermally insulate drain pans exposed to the atmosphere to prevent condensation. Coat insulation with a flame resistant waterproofing material. Provide separate drain pans for each vertical coil section, and a separate drain line for each pan. Size pans to ensure capture of entrained moisture on the downstream-air side of the coil. Seal openings in the casing, such as for piping

connections, to prevent air leakage. Size the water seal for the drain to maintain a pressure of at least 2 inch water gauge greater than the maximum negative pressure in the coil space.

2.7.7.2 Casing

Terminate casings at the curb line and bolt each to the curb using galvanized angle, as indicated in SMACNA 1966.

2.7.7.3 Access Doors

Provide access doors in each section of the casing. Weld doorframes in place, gasket each door with neoprene, hinge with minimum of two brass hinges, and fasten with a minimum of two brass tension fasteners operable from inside and outside of the casing. Where possible, make doors 36 by 18 inches and locate them 18 inches above the floor. Where the space available does not accommodate doors of this size, use doors as large as the space accommodates. Swing doors so that fan suction or pressure holds doors in closed position, airtight. Provide a push-button station, located inside the casing, to stop the supply.

2.7.7.4 Factory-Fabricated Insulated Sheet Metal Panels

Factory-fabricated components are allowed for field-assembled units, provided all requirements specified for field-fabricated plenums and casings are met. Provide panels of modular design, pretested for structural strength, thermal control, condensation control, and acoustical control. Seal and insulate panel joints. Provide and gasket access doors to prevent air leakage. Provide panel construction that is not less than 20 gauge galvanized sheet steel, assembled with fasteners treated against corrosion. Provide standard length panels that deflect not more than 1/2 inch under operation. Construct details, including joint sealing, not specifically covered, as indicated in SMACNA 1966. Construct the plenums and casings to withstand the specified internal pressure of the air systems.

2.7.7.5 Duct Liner

Unless otherwise specified, duct liner is not permitted.

2.7.8 Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles

Provide factory-fabricated units of aluminum that distribute the specified quantity of air evenly over space intended without causing noticeable drafts, air movement faster than 50 fpm in occupied zone, or dead spots anywhere in the conditioned area. Provide outlets for diffusion, spread, throw, and noise level as required for specified performance. Certify performance according to ASHRAE 70. Provide sound rated and certified inlets and outlets according to ASHRAE 70. Provide sound power level as indicated. Provide diffusers and registers with volume damper with accessible operator, unless otherwise indicated; or if standard with the manufacturer, an automatically controlled device is acceptable. Provide opposed blade type volume dampers for all diffusers and registers, except linear slot diffusers. Provide linear slot diffusers with round or elliptical balancing dampers. Where the inlet and outlet openings are located less than 7 feet above the floor, protect them by a grille or screen according to NFPA 90A.

2.7.8.1 Diffusers

Provide diffuser types indicated. Furnish ceiling mounted units with anti-smudge devices, unless the diffuser unit minimizes ceiling smudging through design features. Provide diffusers with air deflectors of the type indicated. Provide air handling troffers or combination light and ceiling diffusers conforming to the requirements of UL Electrical Construction for the interchangeable use as cooled or heated air supply diffusers or return air units. Install ceiling mounted units with rims tight against ceiling. Provide sponge rubber gaskets between ceiling and surface mounted diffusers for air leakage control. Provide suitable trim for flush mounted diffusers. For connecting the duct to diffuser, provide duct collar that is airtight and does not interfere with volume controller. Provide return or exhaust units that are similar to supply diffusers.

2.7.8.2 Registers and Grilles

Provide units that are four-way directional-control type, except provide return and exhaust registers that are fixed horizontal or vertical louver type similar in appearance to the supply register face. Furnish registers with sponge-rubber gasket between flanges and wall or ceiling. Install wall supply registers at least 6 inches below the ceiling unless otherwise indicated. Locate return and exhaust registers 6 inches above the floor unless otherwise indicated. Achieve four-way directional control by a grille face which can be rotated in 4 positions or by adjustment of horizontal and vertical vanes. Provide grilles as specified for registers, without volume control damper.

2.7.9 Louvers

Provide louvers for installation in exterior walls that are associated with the air supply and distribution system as specified in Section 07 60 00 FLASHING AND SHEET METAL 08 91 00 METAL WALLLOUVERS.

2.8 AIR SYSTEMS EQUIPMENT

2.8.1 Fans

Test and rate fans according to AMCA 210. Calculate system effect on air moving devices in accordance with AMCA 201 where installed ductwork differs from that indicated on drawings. Install air moving devices to minimize fan system effect. Where system effect is unavoidable, determine the most effective way to accommodate the inefficiencies caused by system effect on the installed air moving device. The sound power level of the fans must not exceed 85 dBA when tested according to AMCA 300 and rated in accordance with AMCA 301. Provide all fans with an AMCA seal. Connect fans to the motors either directly or indirectly with V-belt drive. Use V-belt drives designed for not less than 150 percent of the connected driving capacity. Provide variable pitch motor sheaves for 15 hp and below, and fixed pitch as defined by AHRI Guideline D (A fixed-pitch sheave is provided on both the fan shaft and the motor shaft. This is a non-adjustable speed drive.). Select variable pitch sheaves to drive the fan at a speed which can produce the specified capacity when set at the approximate midpoint of the sheave adjustment. When fixed pitch sheaves are furnished, provide a replaceable sheave when needed to achieve system air balance. Provide motors for V-belt drives with adjustable rails or bases. Provide removable metal guards for all exposed V-belt drives, and provide speed-test openings at the center of all rotating shafts. Provide fans with personnel screens or guards on both suction and supply ends, except that the screens need not be provided, unless otherwise indicated, where ducts are connected to the fan. Provide fan and motor assemblies with vibration-isolation supports or mountings as indicated. Use vibration-isolation units that are standard products with published loading ratings. Select each fan to produce the capacity required at the fan static pressure indicated. Provide sound power level as indicated. Obtain the sound power level values according to AMCA 300. Provide standard AMCA arrangement, rotation, and discharge as indicated. Provide power ventilators that conform to UL 705 and have a UL

2.8.1.1 Panel Type Power Wall Ventilators

Provide propeller type fans, assembled on a reinforced metal panel with venturi opening spun into panel. Provide direct or V-belt driven fans with wheels less than 24 inches in diameter and provide V-belt driven fans with wheels 24 inches in diameter and larger. Provide fans with wall mounting collar. Provide lubricated bearings. Equip fans with wheel and motor side metal or wire guards which have a corrosion-resistant finish. Provide dripproof type motor enclosure. Install gravity backdraft dampers where indicated. Provide with weatherhood assembly.

2.8.1.2 Ceiling Exhaust Fans

Provide centrifugal type, direct driven suspended cabinet-type ceiling exhaust fans. Provide fans with acoustically insulated housing. Provide chatter-proof backdraft damper. Provide egg-crate design or louver design integral face grille. Mount fan motors on vibration isolators. Furnish unit with mounting flange for hanging unit from above. Provide U.L. listed fans. Provide PL-109-58 labeled ceiling exhaust

2.9 AIR HANDLING UNITS

fan product. Provide proof of PL-109-58 label for ceiling exhaust fan product.

2.9.1 Factory-Fabricated Air Handling Units

Provide single-zone draw-through type units as indicated. Units must include fans, coils, airtight insulated casing, adjustable V-belt drives, belt guards for externally mounted motors, access sections where indicated, combination sectional filter-mixing box, vibration-isolators, and appurtenances required for specified operation. Provide vibration isolators as indicated. Physical dimensions of each air handling unit must be suitable to fit space allotted to the unit with the capacity indicated. Provide air handling unit that is rated in accordance with AHRI 430 and AHRI certified for cooling.

2.9.1.1 Casings Provide

the following:

- a. Casing sections 2 inch double, constructed of a minimum 18 gauge galvanized steel, or 18 gauge corrosion-resisting sheet steel conforming to ASTM A167, Type 304. Inner casing of double-wall units that are a minimum 20 gauge solid galvanized steel or corrosion-resisting sheet steel conforming to ASTM A167, Type 304. Design and construct casing with an integral insulated structural galvanized steel frame such that exterior panels are non-load bearing.
- b. Individually removable exterior panels with standard tools. Removal must not affect the structural integrity of the unit. Furnish casings with access sections, according to paragraph AIR HANDLING UNITS, inspection doors, and access doors, all capable of opening a minimum of 90 degrees, as indicated. Insulated, fully gasketed, double-wall type inspection and access doors, of a minimum 18 gauge outer and 20 gauge inner panels made of either galvanized steel or corrosion-resisting sheet steel conforming to ASTM A167, Type 304. Provide rigid doors with heavy duty hinges and latches. Inspection doors must be a minimum 12 inches wide by 12 inches high. Access doors must be a minimum 24 inches wide, the full height Double-wall insulated type drain pan (thickness equal to exterior casing) constructed of 16 gauge galvanized steel, conforming to ASHRAE 62.1. Insulation will be foam injected with 2" thickness. Design units with thermal breaks. Construct drain pans water tight, treated to prevent corrosion, and designed for positive condensate drainage. When 2 or more cooling coils are used, with one stacked above the other, condensate from the upper coils must not flow across the face of lower coils. Provide intermediate drain pans or condensate collection channels and downspouts, as required to carry condensate to the unit drain pan out of the air stream and without moisture carryover. Construct drain pan to allow for easy visual inspection, including underneath the coil without removal of the coil and to allow complete and easy physical cleaning of the pan underneath the coil without removal of the coil. Provide coils that are individually removable A latched and hinged inspection door, in the fan and coil sections. Screwed panels for inspection of fan and filters are not allowed.

2.9.1.2 Heating and Cooling Coils

Provide coils as specified in paragraph AIR SYSTEMS EQUIPMENT.

2.9.1.3 Air Filters

Provide air filters as specified in paragraph AIR SYSTEMS EQUIPMENT for types and thickness indicated.

2.9.1.4 Fans

Provide the following:

- a. Fans that are double-inlet, centrifugal type with each fan in a separate scroll. Preferred fans are fan wall type with ECM motor of plug style. Dynamically balance fans and shafts prior to installation into air handling unit, then after it has been installed in the air handling unit, statically and dynamically balance the entire fan assembly. Mount fans on steel shafts, accurately ground and finished.
- b. Fan bearings that are sealed against dust and dirt and are precision self-aligning ball or roller type, with L50 rated bearing life at not less than 200,000 hours as defined by ABMA 9 and ABMA 11. Provide bearings that are permanently lubricated or lubricated type with lubrication fittings readily accessible at the drive side of the unit. Support bearings by structural shapes, or die formed sheet structural members, or support plates securely attached to the unit casing. Do not fasten bearings directly to the unit sheet metal casing. Furnish fans and scrolls with coating indicated.
- c. Fans that are driven by a direct drive unit-mounted motor, or a spring type fan assembly floor-mounted motor connected to fans by V-belt drive complete with belt guard for externally mounted motors. Design belt drives for not less than a 1.3 service factor based on motor nameplate rating.
- d. Motor sheaves that are variable pitch for 25 hp and below and fixed pitch above 25 hp as defined by AHRI Guideline D. Where fixed sheaves are required, the use of variable pitch sheaves is allowed during air balance, but replace them with an appropriate fixed sheave after air balance is completed. Select variable pitch sheaves to drive the fan at a speed that produces the specified capacity when set at the approximate midpoint of the sheave adjustment. Furnish motors for V-belt drives with adjustable bases, and with open enclosures.
- e. Motor starters of magnetic type with general-purpose enclosure. Select unit fan or fans to produce the required capacity at the fan static pressure with sound power level as indicated. Obtain the sound power level values according to AMCA 300, ASHRAE 68, or AHRI 260 I-P. Applies to constant volume air handlers.

2.9.1.5 Access Sections and Filter/Mixing Boxes

Provide access sections where indicated and furnish with access doors as shown. Construct access sections and filter/mixing boxes in a manner identical to the remainder of the unit casing and equip with access doors. Design mixing boxes to minimize air stratification and to promote thorough mixing of the air streams.

2.10.1 Variable Air Volume (VAV) and Dual Duct Terminal Units

- a. Provide VAV and dual duct terminal units that are the type, size, and capacity shown, mounted in the ceiling or wall cavity, plus units that are suitable for single or dual duct system applications. Provide actuators and controls as specified in paragraph SUPPLEMENTAL COMPONENTS/SERVICES, subparagraph CONTROLS.
- b. Provide unit enclosures that are constructed of galvanized steel not lighter than 22 gauge or aluminum sheet not lighter than 18 gauge. Provide single or multiple discharge outlets as required. Units with flow limiters are not acceptable. Provide unit air volume that is factory preset and readily field adjustable without special tools. Provide reheat coils as indicated.
- c. Attach a flow chart to each unit. Base acoustic performance of the terminal units upon units tested according to AHRI 880 I-P with the calculations prepared in accordance with AHRI 885. Provide sound power level as indicated. Show discharge sound power for minimum and 1-1/2 inches water gauge inlet static pressure. Provide acoustical lining according to NFPA 90A.

2.10.1.1 Variable Volume, Single Duct Terminal Units

Provide variable volume, single duct, terminal units with a calibrated air volume sensing device, air valve or damper, actuator, and accessory relays. Provide units that control air volume to within plus or minus 5 percent of each air set point volume as determined by the thermostat with variations in inlet pressures from 3/4 to 6 inch water gauge. Provide units with an internal resistance not exceeding 0.4 inch water gauge at maximum flow range. Provide external differential pressure taps separate from the control pressure taps for air flow measurement with a 0 to 1 inch water gauge range.

2.10.1.2 Reheat Units

2.10.1.2.1 Hot Water Coils

Provide fin-and-tube type hot-water coils constructed of seamless copper tubes and copper or aluminum fins mechanically bonded or soldered to the tubes. Provide headers that are constructed of cast iron, welded steel or copper. Provide casing and tube support sheets that are 16 gauge, galvanized steel, formed to provide structural strength. Provide tubes that are correctly circuited for proper water velocity without excessive pressure drop and are drainable where required or indicated. At the factory, test each coil at not less than 250 psi air pressure and provide coils suitable for 200 psi working pressure. Install drainable coils in the air handling units with a pitch of not less than 1/8 inch per foot of tube length toward the drain end. Coils must conform to the provisions of AHRI 410.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

After becoming familiar with all details of the work, verify all dimensions in the field, and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing the work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- a. Install materials and equipment in accordance with the requirements of the contract drawings and approved manufacturer's installation instructions. Accomplish installation by workers skilled in this type of work. Perform installation so that there is no degradation of the designed fire ratings of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors.
- b. No installation is permitted to block or otherwise impede access to any existing machine or system. Install all hinged doors to swing open a minimum of 120 degrees. Provide an area in front of all access doors that clears a minimum of 3 feet. In front of all access doors to electrical circuits, clear the area the minimum distance to energized circuits as specified in OSHA Standards, part 1910.333 (Electrical-Safety Related work practices) and an additional 3 feet.
- c. Except as otherwise indicated, install emergency switches and alarms in conspicuous locations. Mount all indicators, to include gauges, meters, and alarms in order to be easily visible by people in the area.

3.2.1 Condensate Drain Lines

Provide water seals in the condensate drain from all units. Provide a depth of each seal of 2 inches plus the number of inches, measured in water gauge, of the total static pressure rating of the unit to which the drain is connected. Provide water seals that are constructed of 2 tees and an appropriate U-bend with the open end of each tee plugged. Provide pipe cap or plug cleanouts where indicated. Connect drains indicated to connect to the sanitary waste system using an indirect waste fitting. Insulate air conditioner drain lines as specified in Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

3.2.2 Equipment and Installation

Provide frames and supports for tanks, compressors, pumps, valves, air handling units, fans, coils, dampers, and other similar items requiring supports. Floor mount or ceiling hang air handling units as indicated. Anchor and fasten as detailed. Set floor-mounted equipment on not less than 6 inch concrete pads or curbs doweled in place unless otherwise indicated. Make concrete foundations heavy enough to minimize the intensity of the vibrations transmitted to the piping, duct work and the surrounding structure, as recommended in writing by the equipment manufacturer. In lieu of a concrete pad foundation, build a concrete pedestal block with isolators placed between the pedestal block and the floor. Make the concrete foundation or concrete pedestal block a mass not less than three times the weight of the components to be supported. Provide the lines connected to the pump mounted on pedestal blocks with flexible connectors. Submit foundation drawings as specified in paragraph DETAIL DRAWINGS.

3.2.3 Access Panels

Install access panels for concealed valves, vents, controls, dampers, and items requiring inspection or maintenance of sufficient size, and locate them so that the concealed items are easily serviced and maintained or completely removed and replaced. Provide access panels as specified in Section 08 31 00 ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS.

3.2.4 Flexible Duct

Install pre-insulated flexible duct in accordance with the latest printed instructions of the manufacturer to ensure a vapor tight joint. Provide hangers, when required to suspend the duct, of the type recommended by the duct manufacturer and set at the intervals recommended.

3.2.5 Metal Ductwork

Install according to SMACNA 1966 unless otherwise indicated. Install duct supports for sheet metal ductwork according to SMACNA 1966, unless otherwise specified. Do not use friction beam clamps indicated in SMACNA 1966. Anchor risers on high velocity ducts in the center of the vertical run to allow ends of riser to move due to thermal expansion. Erect supports on the risers that allow free vertical movement of the duct. Attach supports only to structural framing members and concrete slabs. Do not anchor supports to metal decking unless a means is provided and approved for preventing the anchor from puncturing the metal decking. Where supports are required between structural framing members, provide suitable intermediate metal framing. Where C-clamps are used, provide

3.2.6 Acoustical Duct Lining

Apply lining in cut-to-size pieces attached to the interior of the duct with nonflammable fire resistant adhesive conforming to ASTM C916, Type I, NFPA 90A, UL 723, and ASTM E84. Provide top and bottom pieces that lap the side pieces and are secured with welded pins, adhered clips of metal, nylon, or high impact plastic, and speed washers or welding cup-head pins installed according to SMACNA 1966. Provide welded pins, cup-head pins, or adhered clips that do not distort the duct, burn through, nor mar the finish or the surface of the duct. Make pins and washers flush with the surfaces of the duct liner and seal all breaks and punctures of the duct liner coating with the nonflammable, fire resistant adhesive. Coat exposed edges of the liner at the duct ends and at other joints where the lining is subject to erosion with a heavy brush coat of the nonflammable, fire resistant adhesive, to prevent delamination of glass fibers. Apply duct liner to flat sheet metal prior to forming duct through the sheet metal brake. Additionally secure lining at the top and bottom surfaces of the duct by welded pins or adhered clips as specified for cut-to-size pieces. Other methods indicated in SMACNA 1966 to obtain proper installation of duct liners in sheet metal ducts, including adhesives and fasteners, are acceptable.

3.2.7 Dust Control

To prevent the accumulation of dust, debris and foreign material during construction, perform temporary dust control protection. Protect the distribution system (supply and return) with temporary seal-offs at all inlets and outlets at the end of each day's work. Keep temporary protection in place until system is ready for startup.

3.2.8 Insulation

Provide thickness and application of insulation materials for ductwork, piping, and equipment according to Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS. Externally insulate outdoor air intake ducts and plenums up to the point where the outdoor air reaches the conditioning unit.

3.2.9 Duct Test Holes

Provide holes with closures or threaded holes with plugs in ducts and plenums as indicated or where necessary for the use of pitot tube in balancing the air system. Plug insulated duct at the duct surface, patched over with insulation and then marked to indicate location of test hole if needed for future use.

3.2.10 Power Transmission Components Adjustment

Test V-belts and sheaves for proper alignment and tension prior to operation and after 72 hours of operation at final speed. Uniformly load belts on drive side to prevent bouncing. Make alignment of direct driven couplings to within 50 percent of manufacturer's maximum allowable range of misalignment.

3.3 EQUIPMENT PADS

Provide equipment pads to the dimensions shown or, if not shown, to conform to the shape of each piece of equipment served with a minimum 3-inch margin around the equipment and supports. Allow equipment bases and foundations, when constructed of concrete or grout, to cure a minimum of 28 calendar days before being loaded.

3.4 CUTTING AND PATCHING

Install work in such a manner and at such time that a minimum of cutting and patching of the building structure is required. Make holes in exposed locations, in or through existing floors, by drilling and smooth by sanding. Use of a jackhammer is permitted only where specifically approved. Make holes through masonry walls to accommodate sleeves with an iron pipe masonry core saw.

3.5 CLEANING

Thoroughly clean surfaces of piping and equipment that have become covered with dirt, plaster, or other material during handling and construction before such surfaces are prepared for final finish painting or are enclosed within the building structure. Before final acceptance, clean mechanical equipment, including piping, ducting, and fixtures, and free from dirt, grease, and finger marks.

3.6 PENETRATIONS

Provide sleeves and prepared openings for duct mains, branches, and other penetrating items, and install during the construction of the surface to be penetrated. Cut sleeves flush with each surface. Place sleeves for round duct 15 inches and smaller. Build framed, prepared openings for round duct larger than 15 inches and square, rectangular or oval ducts. Sleeves and framed openings are also required where grilles, registers, and diffusers are installed at the openings. Provide one inch clearance between penetrating and penetrated surfaces except at grilles, registers, and diffusers. Pack spaces between sleeve or opening and duct or duct insulation with mineral fiber conforming

with ASTM C553, Type 1, Class B-2.

3.6.1 Sleeves

Fabricate sleeves, except as otherwise specified or indicated, from 20 gauge thick mill galvanized sheet metal. Where sleeves are installed in bearing walls or partitions, provide black steel pipe conforming with ASTM A53/A53M, Schedule 20.

3.6.2 Framed Prepared Openings

Fabricate framed prepared openings from 20 gauge galvanized steel, unless otherwise indicated.

3.6.3 Insulation

Provide duct insulation in accordance with Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS continuous through sleeves and prepared openings except firewall penetrations. Terminate duct insulation at fire dampers and flexible connections. For duct handling air at or below 60 degrees F, provide insulation continuous over the damper collar and retaining angle of fire dampers, which are exposed to unconditioned air.

3.6.4 Closure Collars

Provide closure collars of a minimum 4 inches wide, unless otherwise indicated, for exposed ducts and items on each side of penetrated surface, except where equipment is installed. Install collar tight against the surface and fit snugly around the duct or insulation. Grind sharp edges smooth to prevent damage to penetrating surface. Fabricate collars for round ducts 15 inches in diameter or less from 20 gauge galvanized steel. Fabricate collars for square and rectangular ducts, or round ducts with minimum dimension over 15 inches from 18 gauge galvanized steel. Fabricate collars for square and rectangular ducts with a maximum side of 15 inches or less from 20 gauge galvanized steel. Install collars with fasteners a maximum of 6 inches on center. Attach to collars a minimum of 4 fasteners where the opening is 12 inches in diameter or less, and a minimum of 8 fasteners where the opening is 20 inches in diameter or less.

3.6.5 Firestopping

Where ducts pass through fire-rated walls, fire partitions, and fire rated chase walls, seal the penetration with fire stopping materials as specified in Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.

3.7 FIELD PAINTING OF MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT

Clean, pretreat, prime and paint metal surfaces; except aluminum surfaces need not be painted. Apply coatings to clean dry surfaces. Clean the surfaces to remove dust, dirt, rust, oil and grease by wire brushing and solvent degreasing prior to application of paint, except clean to bare metal on metal surfaces subject to temperatures in excess of 120 degrees F. Where more than one coat of paint is specified, apply the second coat after the preceding coat is thoroughly dry. Lightly sand damaged painting and retouch before applying the succeeding coat. Provide aluminum or light gray finish coat.

3.7.1 Temperatures less than 120 degrees F

Immediately after cleaning, apply one coat of pretreatment primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of 0.3 mil, one coat of primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of one mil; and two coats of enamel applied to a minimum dry film thickness of one mil per coat to metal surfaces subject to temperatures less than 120 degrees F.

3.7.2 Temperatures between 120 and 400 degrees F

Apply two coats of 400 degrees F heat-resisting enamel applied to a total

minimum thickness of two mils to metal surfaces subject to temperatures between 120 and 400 degrees F.

3.7.3 Finish Painting

The requirements for finish painting of items only primed at the factory, and surfaces not specifically noted otherwise, are specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION SYSTEMS

Provide identification tags made of brass, engraved laminated plastic, or engraved anodized aluminum, indicating service and item number on all valves and dampers. Provide tags that are 1-3/8 inch minimum diameter with stamped or engraved markings. Make indentations black for reading clarity. Attach tags to valves with No. 12 AWG 0.0808-inch diameter corrosion-resistant steel wire, copper wire, chrome-plated beaded chain or plastic straps designed for that purpose.

3.9 DUCTWORK LEAK TEST

Perform ductwork leak test for the entire air distribution and exhaust system, including fans, coils, filters, etc.][filters, etc. designated as static pressure Class 3 inch water gauge through Class 10 inch water gauge. Provide test procedure, apparatus, and report that conform to SMACNA 1972 CD. The maximum allowable leakage rate is 5% cfm. Complete ductwork leak test with satisfactory results prior to applying insulation to ductwork exterior or concealing ductwork.

3.10 DAMPER ACCEPTANCE TEST

Submit the proposed schedule, at least 2 weeks prior to the start of test. Operate all fire dampers and smoke dampers under normal operating conditions, prior to the occupancy of a building to determine that they function properly. Test each fire damper equipped with fusible link by having the fusible link cut in place. Test dynamic fire dampers with the air handling and distribution system running. Reset all fire dampers with the fusible links replaced after acceptance testing. To ensure optimum operation and performance, install the damper so it is square and free from racking.

3.11 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING

The requirements for testing, adjusting, and balancing are specified in Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING FOR HVAC. Begin testing, adjusting, and balancing only when the air supply and distribution, including controls, has been completed, with the exception of performance tests.

3.12 PERFORMANCE TESTS

Conduct performance tests as required in Section 23 05 93 Testing, Adjusting and Balancing for HVAC and Section 23 09 00 Instrumentation and Control for HVAC.

3.13 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

Wipe equipment clean, with no traces of oil, dust, dirt, or paint spots. Provide temporary filters prior to startup of all fans that are operated during construction, and provide new filters after all construction dirt has been removed from the building, and the ducts, plenums, casings, and other items specified have been vacuum cleaned. Perform and document that proper "Indoor Air Quality During Construction" procedures have been followed; provide documentation showing that after construction ends, and prior to occupancy, new filters were provided and installed. Maintain system in this clean condition until final acceptance. Properly lubricate bearings with oil or grease as recommended by the manufacturer. Tighten belts to proper tension. Adjust control valves and other miscellaneous equipment requiring adjustment to setting indicated or directed. Adjust fans to the speed indicated by the manufacturer to meet specified conditions. Maintain all equipment installed under the contract until close out documentation is received, the project is completed and the building has been documented as beneficially occupied.

3.14 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE

3.14.1 Operation and Maintenance Manuals

Submit six manuals and two DVDs at least 2 weeks prior to field training. Submit data complying with the Statement of Work and other requirements. Submit Data Package 3 for the items/units listed under SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

3.14.2 Operation And Maintenance Training

Conduct a training course for the members of the operating staff as designated by the Contracting Officer. Make the training period consist of a total of 8hours of normal working time and start it after all work specified herein is functionally completed and the Performance Tests have been approved. Conduct field instruction that covers all of the items contained in the Operation and Maintenance Manuals as well as demonstrations of routine maintenance operations. Submit the proposed On-site Training schedule concurrently with the Operation and Maintenance Manuals and at least 14 days prior to conducting the training course.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 31 13.00 40

METAL DUCTS
05/16

PART 1 GENERAL

Section 23 30 00 HVAC AIR DISTRIBUTION apply to work specified in this section.

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF STEEL CONSTRUCTION (AISC)

AISC 325 (2017) Steel Construction Manual

AISC 360 (2016) Specification for Structural Steel Buildings

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE EQUIP IP HDBK (2012) Handbook, HVAC Systems and Equipment (IP Edition)

ASHRAE EQUIP SI HDBK (2012) Handbook, HVAC Systems and Equipment (SI Edition)

ASHRAE FUN IP (2021) Fundamentals Handbook, I-P Edition

ASHRAE FUN SI (2021) Fundamentals Handbook, SI Edition

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS A5.8/A5.8M (2019) Specification for Filler Metals for Brazing and Braze Welding

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A36/A36M (2019) Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel

ASTM A123/A123M (2017) Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products

ASTM A653/A653M (2020) Standard Specification for Steel

Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process

ASTM A924/A924M (2020) Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process

ASTM C1071	(2019) Standard Specification for Fibrous Glass Duct Lining Insulation (Thermal and Sound Absorbing Material)
ASTM D257	(2014) Standard Test Methods for D-C Resistance or Conductance of Insulating Materials
ASTM E90	(2009; R2016) Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements
NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)	
NFPA 90A	(2021) Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems
SHEET METAL AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS' NATIONAL ASSOCIATION (SMACNA)	
SMACNA 1966	(2020) HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible, 4th Edition
SMACNA 1987	(2006) HVAC Duct Systems Inspection Guide, 3rd Edition
SOCIETY FOR PROTECTIVE COATINGS (SSPC)	
SSPC Painting Manual	(2002) Good Painting Practice, Steel Structures Painting Manual, Volume 1 SOCIETY OF
AUTOMOTIVE ENGINEERS INTERNATIONAL (SAE)	
SAE AMS 2480	(2009; Rev H) Phosphate Treatment, Paint, Base
UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)	
UL 181	(2013; Reprint Apr 2017) UL Standard for Safety Factory-Made Air Ducts and Air Connectors
UL 555	(2006; Reprint Aug 2016) UL Standard for Safety Fire Dampers

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are [for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submit the following in accordance with the Statement of Work:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Material, Equipment, and Fixture Lists; G Records of Existing
Conditions; G

SD-02 Shop Drawings Connection

Diagrams; G
Offset Fitting Configurations; G SD-03 Product

Data

Equipment and Performance Data Galvanized Steel

Ductwork Materials; G Brazing Materials

Mill-Rolled Reinforcing and Supporting Materials Round Sheet Metal Duct

Fittings; G

Turning Vanes; G

Flexible Connectors; G Flexible Duct

Materials Power Operated Dampers; G

Fire Dampers and Wall Collars; G Gravity Backdraft and

Relief Dampers; G Manual Volume Dampers; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Ductwork Leakage Tests; G Operational Tests;

G

SD-07 Certificates

Listing of Product Installations Galvanized Steel Ductwork

Materials Brazing Materials

Mill-Rolled Reinforcing and Supporting Materials Round Sheet Metal

Duct Fittings

Turning Vanes Dampers

Sound Traps Flexible

Connectors

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data Operation and

Maintenance Manuals; G Power Operated

Dampers; G

Fire Dampers and Wall Collars; G SD-11

Closeout Submittals

Record Drawings; G

1.3 QUALITY CONTROL

When furnishing the listing of product installations for medium and high pressure ductwork systems include identification of at least 5 units, similar to those proposed for use, that have been in successful service for a minimum period of 5 years. Include purchaser, address of installation, service organization, and date of installation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Include the manufacturer's style or catalog numbers, specification and drawing reference numbers, warranty information, and fabrication site information within material, equipment, and fixture lists.

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Provide low-pressure systems ductwork and plenums where maximum air velocity is 2,000-feet per minute (fpm) and maximum static pressure is 2-inches water gage (wg), positive or negative.

Submit connection diagrams for low pressure ductwork systems indicating the relation and connection of devices and apparatus by showing the general physical layout of all controls, the interconnection of one system (or portion of system) with another, and internal tubing, wiring, and other devices.

High velocity systems ductwork encompass systems where:

- a. Minimum air velocity exceeds 2,000-feet per minute (fpm) or static pressure exceeds 2-inches water gage (wg).
- b. Medium static pressure ranges from over 2-inches wg through 3-inches wg,

2.2 COMPONENTS rigid fibrous-glass ductworkwg through 6-inches wg positive. TS

2.2.1 Round Sheet Metal Duct Fittings

Submit offset fitting configurations for approval. Shop fabricate fittings.

2.2.1.1 Fittings Construction

Manufacture as separate fittings, not as tap collars welded or brazed into duct sections.

Provide two-piece type miter elbows for angles less than 31 degrees, three-piece type for angles 31 through 60 degrees, and five-piece type for angles 61 through 90 degrees. Ensure centerline radius of elbows is 1-1/2 times fitting cross section diameter.

Provide conical type crosses, increasers, reducers, reducing tees, and 90-degree tees.

Ensure cutouts in fitting body are equal to branch tap dimension or, where smaller, excess material is flared and rolled into smooth radius nozzle configuration.

2.2.2 Dampers

Construct low pressure drop, high-velocity manual volume dampers, and high-velocity fire dampers in accordance with ASHRAE EQUIP IP HDBK, Chapter

2.2.3 Flexible Connectors for Sheet Metal

Use UL listed connectors, 30-ounce per square yard, waterproof, fire-retardant, airtight, woven fibrous-glass cloth, double coated with chloroprene. Clear width, not including clamping section, is 6 to 8-inches.

2.2.4 Duct Hangers

For duct hangers in contact with galvanized duct surfaces, provide galvanized steel painted with inorganic zinc.

2.2.5 Mill-Rolled Reinforcing and Supporting Materials

Provide mill-rolled structural steel conforming to ASTM A36/A36M. Whenever in contact with sheet metal ducting, provide galvanized steel in accordance with ASTM A123/A123M.

In lieu of mill-rolled structural steel, submit equivalent strength, proprietary-design, rolled-steel structural support systems for approval.

2.2.6 Flexible Duct Materials

Ensure flexible duct connectors comply with NFPA 90A, and conform with UL 181, Class 1 material.

Provide wire-reinforced cloth duct consisting of a [vinyl-impregnated and coated fibrous-glass cloth bonded to and supported by a corrosion-protected spring steel helix. Fabric may be a laminate of metallic film and fibrous glass. Ensure working pressure rating of ducting is not less than three times maximum system pressure, and the temperature range is minus 20 to plus 175 degrees F.

][Provide wire-reinforced fibrous-glass duct consisting of a minimum 1 pound/cubic foot density fibrous glass, bonded to and supported by corrosion-protected spring helix. Vapor barriers are a minimum of 4 mil, pigmented polyvinylchloride film. Ensure duct is bendable without damage through 180 degrees with an inside bend radius not greater than two duct diameters. Minimum wall thickness is 1-inch. Thermal conductivity is not greater than 0.23 BTU per hour per square foot per degrees F at 75 degrees F mean temperature. Ensure permeance is not greater than 0.10 perm.

Working pressure range is from minus 1/2-inch wg to plus 1-1/2-inches wg. Working temperature ranges from minus 20 to plus 250 degrees F. Minimum sustained velocity without delamination is 2,400 fpm. Use materials conforming to NFPA 90A.

2.2.7 Manual Volume Dampers

Conform to SMACNA 1966 for volume damper construction.

Equip dampers with an indicating quadrant regulator with a locking feature externally located and easily accessible for adjustment and standoff brackets to allow mounting outside external insulation. Where damper rod lengths exceed 30-inches, provide a regulator at each end of damper shaft.

2.2.7.1 Damper Construction

Provide all damper shafts with two-end bearings.

Ensure splitter damper is 22-gage sheet metal. Hinges are 1/8-inch thick door type.

Provide a full length damper shaft and extend it beyond the damper blade. Use a 3/8-inch square shaft for damper lengths up to 20 -inches and a 1/2 -inch square shaft for damper lengths 20-inches and larger. Where necessary to prevent damper vibration or slippage, provide adjustable support rods with locking provisions external to duct at damper blade end.

Provide dampers in ducts having a width perpendicular to the axis of the damper that is greater than 12-inches of multiblade type having a substantial frame with blades fabricated of 16-gage metal. Provide blades not exceeding 10-inches in width and 48 -inches in length, pinned to 1/2 -inch diameter shafts. Ensure dampers greater than 48-inches in width are made in two or more sections with intermediate mullions, each section being mechanically interlocked with the adjoining section or sections. Provide blades with [graphite-impregnated nylon] [oil-impregnated sintered bronze] bearings and connect so that adjoining blades rotate in opposite directions.

2.2.8 Power Operated Dampers

Ensure dampers conform to applicable requirements specified under Section 23 09 33.00 40 ELECTRIC AND ELECTRONIC CONTROL SYSTEM FOR HVAC.

2.2.9 Fire Dampers and Wall Collars

Ensure fire damper locations are in accordance with NFPA 90A. Provide fire dampers in ductwork at firewall barriers.

Construct and label fire dampers in accordance with UL 555 to provide damper and mounting fire-resistance that equals or exceeds fire-resistance of the construction in which installed. For link loads in excess of 20 pounds , provide UL-approved quartzoid links.

Construct wall collars in accordance with UL 555.

2.3 MATERIALS

2.3.1 Galvanized Steel Ductwork Materials

Provide hot-dip galvanized carbon steel ductwork sheet metal of lock-forming quality, with regular spangle-type zinc coating, conforming to ASTM A924/A924M and ASTM A653/A653M, Designation G90. Treat duct surfaces to be painted by annealing.

Conform to ASHRAE EQUIP IP HDBK, Chapter 16, ASHRAE FUN IP, Chapter 32 and SMACNA 1966 for sheet metal gages and reinforcement thickness.

Low pressure ductwork minimum thicknesses are:

MINIMUM SHEET METAL THICKNESS	
<u>DUCT WIDTH INCHES</u>	<u>GAGE</u>
0-12	26
13-30	24
31-60	22

2.3.2 Brazing Materials

Provide silicon bronze brazing materials conforming to AWS A5.8/A5.8M.

2.3.3 Mill-Rolled Reinforcing and Supporting Materials

Conform to ASTM A36/A36M for mill-rolled structural steel. Wherever in contact with sheet metal ducting, galvanize to conforming with ASTM A123/A123M .

In lieu of mill-rolled structural steel, submit for approval, equivalent strength, proprietary design, rolled-steel structural support systems.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

For sheet metal surfaces to be painted, and surfaces to which adhesives are to be applied, clean surface of oil, grease, and deleterious substances.

Ensure strength is adequate to prevent failure under service pressure or vacuum created by fast closure of duct devices. Provide leaktight, automatic relief devices.

3.1.1 Construction Standards

Provide sheet metal construction in accordance with the recommendations for best practices in ASHRAE EQUIP IP HDBK, Chapter 16, ASHRAE FUN IP, Chapter 32, SMACNA 1966, and NFPA 90A.

Design and fabricate supplementary steel in accordance with AISC 360 and AISC 325.

Where construction methods for certain items are not described in the referenced standards or herein, perform the work in accordance with recommendations for best practice defined in ASHRAE EQUIP IP HDBK.

3.2 INSTALLATION

Fabricate an airtight system. Include reinforcements, bracing, supports, framing, gasketing, sealing, and fastening to provide rigid construction and freedom from vibration, airflow-induced motion and noise, and excessive deflection at specified maximum system air pressure and velocity.

Provide offsets and transformations as required to avoid interference with the building construction, piping, or equipment.

Make plenum anchorage provisions, sheet metal joints, and other areas airtight and watertight by caulking, mating galvanized steel and concrete surfaces with a two-component elastomer.

3.2.1 Jointing

Enclose dampers located behind architectural intake or exhaust louvers by a rigid sheet metal collar and sealed to building construction with elastomers for complete air tightness.

Provide outside air-intake ducts and plenums made from sheet metal with soldered watertight joints.

3.2.2 Ducts

Wherever ducts pass through firewalls or through walls or floors dividing conditioned spaces from unconditioned spaces, provide a flanged segment in that surface during surface construction.

Where interiors of ducting may be viewed through air diffusion devices, construct the viewed interior with sheet metal and paint flat black.

3.2.2.1 Ductwork Cleaning Provisions

Protect open ducting from construction dust and debris in a manner approved by the Contracting Officer. Clean dirty assembled ducting by subjecting all main and branch interior surfaces to airstreams moving at velocities two times specified working velocities, at static pressures within maximum ratings. This may be accomplished by: filter-equipped portable blowers which remain the Contractor's property; wheel-mounted, compressed-air operated perimeter lances which direct the compressed air and which are pulled in the direction of normal airflow; or other means approved by the Contracting Officer. Use water- and oil- free compressed air for cleaning ducting. After construction is complete, and prior to acceptance of the work, remove construction dust and debris from exterior surfaces.

3.3 APPLICATION

3.3.1 Low Pressure Sheet Metal Ducts

Weld angle iron frames at corners and ends, whenever possible. Rivet or weld angle iron reinforcements to ducts not more than 6-inches on center, with not less than two points of attachment. Spot welding, where used, is 3-inches on center.

Seal standard seam joints with an elastomer compound to comply with SMACNA 1966 Seal Class A, B or C as applicable.

Limit crossbreaking to 4-feet and provide on all ducts 8-inches wide and wider. Provide bead reinforcement in lieu of crossbreaking where panel popping may occur. Where rigid insulation is applied, crossbreaking is not required.

3.3.1.1 Longitudinal Duct Seams Provide

Pittsburgh lock corner seams.

3.3.1.2 Joints and Gaskets

Bolt companion angle flanges together with 1/4-inch diameter bolts and nuts spaced 6-inches on center. Gasket flanged joints with chloroprene full-face gaskets 1/8-inch thick, with Shore A 40 durometer hardness. Use one piece gaskets, vulcanized at joints.

3.3.1.3 Flexible Duct Joints

Between flexible duct without sheet metal collars and round metal ductwork connections make joints by trimming the ends, coating the inside of the flexible duct for a distance equal to depth of insertion with elastomer caulk, and by securing with sheet metal screws or binding with a strap clamp.

3.3.1.4 Square Elbows

Provide single-vane duct turns in accordance with SMACNA 1966[, use on ducts 12 inches in width and narrower.

3.3.1.5 Radius Elbows

Conform to SMACNA 1966 for radius elbows. Provide an inside radius equal to the width of the duct. Where installation conditions preclude use of standard elbows, the inside radius may be reduced to a minimum of 0.25 times duct width. Install turning vanes in accordance with the following schedule.

WIDTH OF ELBOWS INCHES	RADIUS OF TURNING VANES IN PERCENT OF DUCT WIDTH		
	<u>VANE NO. 1</u>	<u>VANE NO. 2</u>	<u>VANE NO. 3</u>
Up to 16	56	--	--
17 to 48	43	73	--
49 and over	37	55	83

Where two elbows are placed together in the same plane for ducts 30-inches wide and larger, continue the guide vanes through both elbows rather than spaced in accordance with above schedule.

3.3.1.6 Outlets, Inlets, and Duct Branches

Install branches, inlets, and outlets so that air turbulence is reduced to a minimum and air volume properly apportioned. Install adjustable splitter dampers at all supply junctions to permit adjustment of the amount of air entering the branch. Wherever an air-diffusion device is shown as being installed on the side, top, or bottom of a duct, and whenever a branch take-off is not of the splitter type; provide a commercially manufactured 45 degree side-take-off (STO) fitting with manual volume damper to allow adjustment of the air quantity and to provide an even flow of air across the device or duct it services.

Where a duct branch is to handle more than 25 percent of the air handled by the duct main, use a complete 90-degree increasing elbow with an inside radius of 0.75 times branch duct width. Size of the leading end of the increasing elbow within the main duct with the same ratio to the main duct size as the ratio of the related air quantities handled.

Where a duct branch is to handle 25 percent or less of the air handled by the duct main, construct the branch connection with a 45 degree side take-off entry in accordance with SMACNA 1966.

3.3.1.7 Duct Transitions

Where the shape of a duct changes, ensure the angle of the side of the transition piece does not exceed 15 degrees from the straight run of duct connected thereto.

Where equipment is installed in ductwork, ensure the angle of the side of the transition piece from the straight run of duct connected thereto does not exceed 15 degrees on the upstream side of the equipment and 22-1/2 degrees on the downstream side of the equipment.

3.3.1.8 Branch Connections

Construct radius tap-ins in accordance with SMACNA 1966.

3.3.1.9 Access Openings

Construct access door in accordance with SMACNA 1966, except that sliding doors may be used only for special conditions upon prior approval. Provide double-panel type doors. Install access doors and panels in ductwork at controls or at any item requiring periodic inspection, adjustment, maintenance, or cleaning.

Minimum access opening size is 12 by 18-inches, unless precluded by duct dimensions or otherwise indicated.

Make airtight access doors that leak by adding or replacing hinges and latches or by construction of new doors adequately reinforced, hinged, and latched.

3.3.1.10 Plenum Construction

Provide intake and discharge plenum companion angle joints with the following minimum thickness of materials:

<u>LONGEST ANGLES SIDE INCHES</u>	<u>SHEET METAL USS GAGE ALL SIDES</u>	<u>COMPANION ANGLES INCHES</u>	<u>REINFORCEMENT 24 INCHES ON CENTER MAXIMUM</u>
To 48	20	1-1/2 by 1-1/2 by 1/8	1-1/2 by 1-1/2 by 1/8
49 to 84	18	2 by 2 by 1/8	2 by 2 by 3/16
85 to 120	16	2 by 2 by 1/8	2 by 2 by 1/8
121 and larger	14	2 by 2 by 3/16	2 by 2 by 3/16

At the floor line and other points where plenums join masonry construction, bolt panels 12-inches on center to 2- by 2- by 3/16-inch thick hot-dip galvanized steel angle that has been secured to the masonry with masonry anchors and bolts 24-inches on center and caulked tight to the masonry.

Anchor panels to curbing with hot-dip galvanized steel angle iron of a size not less than 2- by 2- by 3/16-inch thick. Concrete curbing includes angle iron nosing with welded studs for the anchoring of panels. Level nosing at curb height within plus or minus 1/16-inch.

Weld and grind miter corners for angle iron and channel iron.

3.3.1.11 Manual Volume Dampers

Provide balancing dampers of the splitter, butterfly, or multilouver type, to balance each respective main and branch duct.

For dampers regulated through ceilings provide a regulator concealed in a box mounted in the ceiling, with a cover finish aesthetically compatible with ceiling surface. Where ceiling is of removable construction, set regulators above the ceiling, and mark the location on ceiling in a manner acceptable to the Contracting Officer.

3.3.1.12 Flexible Connectors for Sheet Metal

Connect air handling equipment, ducts crossing building expansion joints, and fan inlets and outlets to upstream and downstream components by treated woven-cloth connectors. Install connectors only after system fans are operative, and vibration isolation mountings have been adjusted. When system fans are operating, ensure connectors are free of wrinkles caused by misalignment or fan reaction. Width of surface is curvilinear.

3.3.2 Rectangular Sheet Metal Ducts

3.3.2.1 Joints, and Reinforcement

Ensure minimum sheet metal gages, joints, and reinforcements between joints are in accordance with ASHRAE EQUIP IP HDBK, Chapter 16, ASHRAE FUN IP, Chapter 32 and SMACNA 1966.

Ensure sheet metal minimum thickness, transverse reinforcement between joints, and joints of ducts are in accordance with the following:

LONGEST SIDE (INCHES)	SHEET METAL GAGE	COMPANION ANGLE (INCHES)	REINFORCEMENT ANGLES 24 INCHES ON CENTER MAXIMUM (BACK)
97 to 108	16	2 by 2 by 1/8, two tie rods along angle	Two 2 by 2 by 1/8, two tie rods along angle
109 to 132	16	2 by 2 by 3/16, two tie rods along angle	Two 2 by 2 by 3/16, two tie rods along angle
133 and longer	14	2 by 2 by 3/16, with tie rods every 48 inches	Two 2 by 2 by 3/16, with tie rods every 48 inches

3.3.2.2 Duct Branch Transition

Where a duct branch handles over 25 percent of the air transported by the duct main, use a complete 90-degree increasing elbow, with an inside radius of 0.75 times duct branch width. Ensure the size of the trailing end of the increasing elbow within the main duct has the same ratio to the main duct size as the ratio of the relative air quantities handled.

Where a duct branch is to handle 25 percent or less of the air handled by the duct main, provide a branch connection with an inside radius of 0.75 times branch duct width, a minimum arc length of 45 degrees, and an outside radius of 1.75 times duct branch width. Place arc tangent to duct main.

3.3.3 Round Sheet Metal Ducts

3.3.3.1 Duct Gages and Reinforcement

Sheet metal minimum thickness, joints, and reinforcement between joints shall be in accordance with ASHRAE EQUIP IP HDBK, Chapter 16, ASHRAE FUN IP, Chapter 32 and SMACNA 1966.

Provide ducts with supplemental girth angle supports, riveted with solid rivets 6 inches on center to duct.

Locate girth angles as follows:

<u>DIAMETER, INCHES</u>	<u>REINFORCEMENT-MAXIMUM SPACING INCHES</u>
25 to 36	1-1/4 by 1-1/4, 1/8 thick, 72 inches on center
37 to 50	1-1/4 by 1-1/4, 1/8 thick, 60 inches on center
51 to 60	1-1/2 by 1-1/2, 1/8 thick, 48 inches on center

Use hex-shaped bolt heads and nuts, 5/16-inch diameter for ducts up to 50-inch diameter, and 3/8-inch diameter for 51-inch diameter ducts and larger.

Continuously weld flanges to duct on outside of duct and intermittently welded with 1-inch welds every 4-inches on inside joint face. Remove excess filler metal from inside face. Protect galvanized areas that have been damaged by welding with manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant coating.

3.3.3.2 Duct Joints

Provide duct joints manufactured by machine, with spiral locksets up to and including 60-inch diameters, and to dimensional tolerances compatible with fittings provided. Draw-band girth joints are not acceptable.

Prepare slip joints by coating the male fitting with elastomer sealing materials, exercising care to prevent mastic from entering fitting bore. Leave only a thin annular mastic line exposed internally. Use sheet metal screws to make assembly rigid, not less than four screws per joint, maximum spacing 6-inches. Do not use pop rivets. Tape and heat seal all joints.

3.3.3.3 Duct Transitions

Where the shape of a duct changes, ensure the angle of the side of the transition piece does not exceed 15 degrees from the straight run of duct connected thereto.

Where equipment is installed in ductwork, ensure the angle of the side of the transition piece from the straight run of duct connected thereto does not exceed 15 degrees on the upstream side of the equipment and 22-1/2 degrees on the downstream side of the equipment.

3.3.4 Transverse Reinforcement Joints

Provide transverse reinforcements that are riveted with solid rivets to duct sides 6 inches on center. Weld transverse reinforcement at all corners to form continuous frames.

3.3.5 Joint Gaskets

For flanged joints, use chloroprene full-face gaskets 1/8-inch thick, with Shore A 40 durometer

hardness. Use one-piece gaskets, vulcanized at joints.

3.3.6 Radius Elbows

Fabricate elbow proportions and radius elbows in accordance with ASHRAE EQUIP IP HDBK, Chapter 16, ASHRAE FUN IP, Chapter 32 and SMACNA 1966.

3.3.7 Access Openings

Install access panels in ductwork adjacent to fire dampers.

Minimum size of access opening is 12 by 18 inches, unless precluded by duct dimension.

Frame access openings with welded and ground miter joints, 1/8-inch thick strap steel, with 1/4-inch studs welded to frame. Ensure cover plates are not less than 16-gage, reinforced as necessary for larger sizes.

In lieu of access doors, use readily accessible flanged duct sections upon approval. Provide stable hanger supports for disconnected duct terminal.

3.3.8 Duct Supports

Install duct support in accordance with ASHRAE EQUIP IP HDBK, Chapter 16, ASHRAE FUN IP, Chapter 32 and SMACNA 1966. Meet the minimum size for duct hangers as specified in ASHRAE EQUIP IP HDBK, Chapter 16, ASHRAE FUN IP, Chapter 32 and SMACNA 1966. Provide two hangers where necessary to eliminate sway. Support attachment to duct surfaces by solid rivet 4-inches on center.

Take the following into account in selection of a hanging system:

- a. Location and precedence of work under other sections
- b. Interferences of various piping and electrical conduit
- c. Equipment, and building configuration
- d. Structural and safety factor requirements
- e. Vibration, and imposed loads under normal and abnormal service conditions

Support sizes, configurations, and spacing are given to show the minimal type of supporting components required. If installed loads are excessive for the specified hanger spacing, hangers, and accessories provide heavier-duty components or reduce hanger spacing. After system startup, replace any duct support device which due to length, configuration, or size, vibrates or causes possible failure of a member. Do not use a ductwork support system that allows a cascade-type failure to occur.

Do not hang ductwork and equipment from roof deck, piping, or other ducts or equipment. Maximum span between any two points is 10-feet, with lesser spans as required by duct assemblies, interferences, and permitted loads imposed. Where support from metal deck systems is involved, coordinate support requirements with installation of metal deck.

3.3.8.2 Hangars

Attach hanger rods, angles, and straps to beam clamps. Receive approval from the Contracting Officer for concrete inserts, masonry anchors, and fasteners for the application.

Hardened high-carbon spring-steel fasteners fitted onto beams and miscellaneous structural steel are acceptable upon prior approval of each proposed application and upon field demonstration of conformance to specification requirements. Make fasteners from steel conforming to AISI Type 1055, treated and finished in conformance with SAE AMS 2480, Type Z (zinc phosphate base), Class 2 (supplementary treatment). Verify a 72-hour load-carrying capacity by a certified independent laboratory.

Where ductwork system contains heavy equipment, excluding air-diffusion devices and single-leaf dampers, hang such equipment independently of the ductwork by means of rods or angles of sizes adequate to support the load.

Cross-brace hangers to preclude swaying both vertically and laterally.

3.3.8.3 Installation

Ensure hanger spacing gives a 20-to-1 safety factor for supported load. Maximum load supported by any two fasteners is 100 pounds.

Install hangers on both sides of all duct turns, branch fittings, and transitions.

Friction rod assemblies are not acceptable.

3.3.8.4 Strap-type Hangars

Support rectangular ducts up to 36-inches by strap-type hangers attached at not less than three places to not less than two duct surfaces in different planes.

Perforated strap hangers are not acceptable.

3.3.8.5 Trapeze Hangars

Support rectangular ducting, 36-inches and larger, by trapeze hangers. Support ducts situated in unconditioned areas and required to have insulation with a vapor-sealed facing on trapeze hangers. Space hangers far enough out from the side of the duct to permit the duct insulation to be placed on the duct inside the trapeze. Do not penetrate the vapor-sealed facing with duct hangers.

Where trapeze hangers are used, support the bottom of the duct on angles sized as follows:

<u>WIDTH OF DUCT, INCHES</u>	<u>MINIMUM BOTTOM ANGLE SIZE, INCHES</u>
30 and smaller	1-1/4 by 1-1/4 by 1/8
31 to 48	1-1/2 by 1-1/2 by 1/8
49 to 72	1-1/2 by 1-1/2 by 3/16
73 to 96	2 by 2 by 1/4
97 and wider	3 by 3 by 1/4

3.3.8.6 Purlins

Do not support ducting from roof purlins at points greater than one-sixth of the purlin span from the roof truss. Do not exceed 400 pounds load per hanger.

If the hanger load must exceed the above limit, provide reinforcing of purlin(s) or additional support beam(s). When an additional beam is used, have the beam bear on the top chord of the roof trusses, and also bear over the gusset plates of top chord. Stabilize the beam by connection to roof purlin along bottom flange.

Purlins used for supporting fire-protection sprinkler mains, electrical lighting fixtures, electrical power ducts, or cable trays are considered fully loaded. Provide supplemental reinforcing or auxiliary support steel for these purlins when used to support ductwork.

3.3.8.7 Vibration Isolation

3.3.9 Flexible Connectors for Steel Metal

Connect air-handling equipment, ducts crossing building expansion joints, and fan inlets and outlets to upstream and downstream components with treated woven-cloth connectors.

Install connectors only after system fans are operative and all vibration isolation mountings have been adjusted. When system fans are operating, ensure connectors are free of wrinkles caused by misalignment or fan reaction. Width of surface is curvilinear.

3.3.10 Duct Probe Access

Provide holes with neat patches, threaded plugs, or threaded or twist-on caps for air-balancing pitot tube access. Provide extended-neck fittings where probe access area is insulated.

3.3.11 Openings In Roofs and Walls

Existing building openings are fixed in size and can not be resized without authorization. Provide equipment to suit existing opening size.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.5 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

3.5.1 Operation and Maintenance

Submit 6 copies of the operation and maintenance manuals 30 calendar days prior to testing the medium and high pressure ductwork systems. Update data and resubmit for final approval no later than 30 calendar days prior to contract completion.

Ensure operation and maintenance manuals are consistent with manufacturer's standard brochures, schematics, printed instructions, general operating procedures and safety precautions.

3.5.2 Record Drawings

Provide record drawings with current factual information. Include deviations from, and amendments to, the drawings. Include concealed or visible changes in the work. Label drawings "As-Built".

-- End of Section --

SECTION 26 10 00
ELECTRICAL-GENERAL PROVISIONS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The Statement of Work.
- B. Safety: In accordance with generally accepted construction practices, the Contractor shall be solely and completely responsible for conditions of the job site, including safety of all persons and property during performance of the work. This requirement will apply continuously and not be limited to normal working hours.
- C. Scope of Work: Furnish all materials and equipment (except those items specifically stated in these Specifications or on the Drawings as being furnished by others), labor and incidentals required for the electrical work as indicated in these Specifications and Drawings, and as required to make a complete and operating installation to the satisfaction of the Contracting Officer.
 - 1. Furnish competent supervision of the work to be performed at all times during the progress of the work.
 - 2. The work includes (but is not necessarily limited to) the following:
 - a. Connection to existing services as indicated.
 - b. Removal of existing equipment and material on the existing building as indicated on the drawings and in the Statement of Work.
 - c. New fixtures, materials and accessories.
- D. Job Conditions
 - 1. Carefully investigate structural conditions, wall, furring and chase locations, and room finishes and make actual measurements on the job so that all equipment such as panel- boards, switches, receptacles, lighting fixtures, fire alarm stations, horns, annunciators, and accessories shall fit. Practical consideration shall be given to coordination of all visible devices with aesthetic and architectural design elements.
 - 2. Verify all measurements and be responsible for the correctness of same before ordering any materials or doing any work. No extra charge or compensation will be allowed because of any difference between the actual measurements and those indicated on the drawings. Any difference which might be discovered by the Contractor shall be submitted to the Contracting Officer for consideration before proceeding with the work.
- E. Law and Permits:
 - 1. The latest published regulations of the State and Local Building Codes, National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) and National Electrical Code, with the latest tentative interim amendments, shall be considered as included in these specifications, and all applicable requirements shall be fully complied with. Questions regarding interpretation shall be addressed to the Contracting Officer.
 - 2. Apply for all permits, licenses, and inspection certificates and pay all fees incidental to the carrying on the electrical work. Give notice to the proper authorities in ample time for the work to be inspected and approved as it progresses, and conceal no work until approved by the electrical inspectors having jurisdiction. The National Electrical Code and National Board of Fire Underwriters and all state and local rulings shall be observed and shall govern the character of this work. Should the drawings or these specifications in any way conflict with the Code, State or local

rules, promptly notify the Contracting Officer in writing in order that necessary changes can be accomplished by appropriate modification.

3. Upon completion of the installation, a certificate of approval from the electrical inspection department having jurisdiction thereon shall be furnished to the Contracting Officer, and all fees shall be paid by the Contractor. The certificate shall not release the Contractor from any guarantee or warranty obligations set forth in these specifications.

F. Examination of Premises:

1. Visit the site of the proposed work, inspect the facilities and become familiar with the difficulties and restrictions attending the execution of the Contract. No additional compensation for failure to be so informed will be allowed.

G. Discrepancies:

1. Written clarification shall be obtained before submitting a proposal for the work under this division as to discrepancies or omissions from the Contract Documents, or questions as to the intent thereof.
2. Consideration will not be granted for misunderstanding of the amount of work to be performed. Tender of a proposal and/or bid conveys full agreement of the items and conditions specified, shown on the drawings, and required by the nature of the project unless specific written exceptions are provided with the proposal and/or bid documents.

H. Guarantee:

1. All materials and workmanship shall be guaranteed for a period of one year from the date of acceptance of the project as substantially completed in accordance with the drawings and specifications, or when beneficially used by the Government, whichever first occurs as certified by the Contracting Officer. Defects due to faulty materials, methods of installation or workmanship shall be repaired or replaced promptly with the least inconvenience and without expense to the Government, and at a time designated by the Contracting Officer. This guarantee is an addition to any specific performance guarantees called for in the individual paragraphs.
2. Submit three (3) copies of all warranties and guarantees for systems, equipment, devices, and materials (this includes two (2) copies for maintenance manuals).
3. Submit for review all requested product data, shop drawings and samples. All cuts, catalogues, bulletins, diagrams, curves, etc., shall be submitted in six (6) copies and in accordance with paragraphs "Submission Requirements" and Resubmission Requirements" where drawings (reproducible) used. Trade names, manufacturers, and catalog numbers are mentioned herein and on the drawings solely in order to establish a standard for the type, general design, and quality of product required. Other products similar in design of equal quality capable of fitting within the spaces allocated and complying with the Drawings and Specifications will be considered after the Contract is let unless "prior approval" requirements are set forth in these documents. Where two or more manufacturers or materials are named, the Contractor may submit any of those named, provided they conform to the Specifications and design intent. The submission of samples may be required by the Contracting Officer particularly wherever equipment or appliances are visible in finished areas. Demonstrations of a product's ability to perform as specified shall be arranged if required. Dimensional data and weights shall be included. Review of submittals and shop drawings does not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility for fitting the equipment in the space allotted with space for electrical connection and for servicing, or for coordination of the work with work of other trades. Contractor shall review submittals and shop drawings and indicate by stamp or letter that he has reviewed them before forwarding them to the Contracting Officer. Submittals and Drawings will be returned after review indicating whether or not exceptions are taken and the required procedure to be followed thereafter.

Resubmission of revised submittals and shop drawings is required before construction is begun.

4. Corrections or comments made on the submittals and drawings during this review do not relieve the Contractor from compliance with the requirements of the Drawings and Specifications. This review is for general conformance with the design concept of the project and general compliance with the information given in the Contract Documents. The Contractor is responsible for confirming and correlating all quantities and dimensions, selecting fabrication processes and techniques of construction.
 5. The products listed below shall be submitted for review after the award of the Contract and before any equipment or materials are purchased. If a product is unacceptable, another product shall be submitted.
 6. Items to be submitted are as follows:
 - a. Lighting fixtures, ballasts & lamps
 7. Further descriptions or information required with shop drawings shall be included with the description of materials specified herein as follows:
 - a. Lighting Fixtures:
 - 1) Include certified test data showing performance.
- I. Standards and Regulations:
1. The work under this division shall comply with the latest edition of the applicable standards and codes of the following:
 - a. UL Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc.
 - b. NEMA National Electric Manufacturers Association
 - c. NEC National Electric Code
 - d. Local and State Building Code
 - e. CBM Certified Ballast Manufacturer
 - f. NEPA National Fire Protection Association
 - g. FM Factory Mutual
 - h. ETL Electrical Testing Laboratories
 - i. IES Illuminating Engineering Society
 2. Include all items of labor and materials required to comply with such standards and codes. Where quantities, sizes or other requirements indicated on the Drawings, or herein specified are in excess of the requirements of the standards and codes, the Specifications and/or Drawings shall govern.
- J. Maintenance Manuals:
1. Submit two (2) copies, including wiring diagrams, maintenance and operating instructions, parts listings, and copies of all other submittals required by this Division 16. Organize each maintenance manual with Table of Contents, Index and thumb-tab marked for each section of information, Bind in 2", three-ring binders, vinyl covered, with pockets to contain folded sheets. Properly label contents on spine and face of binder.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCTS

- A. Unless otherwise specified, all materials shall be new and unused and shall be listed by Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc., for the service intended.
- B. Provide products which are compatible with other products of the electrical work and with other work requiring interface with the electrical work, including electrical connections and control devices. For exposed electrical work, coordinate colors and finishes with other work.

- C. Ensure that all electrical equipment, devices, and materials arrive at the site in good conditions, intact in factory package or crate. Any equipment found to be damaged shall be removed from the project site.
- D. Store all electrical equipment, devices, and materials in factory containers or package until ready for use. Storage facility shall be a clean, dry, indoor space which provides protection against weather. Avoid damage by condensation by providing temporary heating when required.
- E. Handle all electrical equipment, devices, and materials carefully to prevent breakage, denting or scoring of the finish. Damaged materials shall be removed from the project site.

PART 3 INSTALLATION AND EXECUTION

3.1 EXECUTION

- A. Do all cutting and patching necessary for the installation of the work. Note that the integrity of any fire-rated ceilings and/or ceiling-roof assemblies must be maintained. No cutting, drilling or insertion of sleeves which may weaken a structural member shall be done without consent of the Contracting Officer. Finished floors, walls, and ceilings shall not be broken without consent of the Contracting Officer. Patching and repairs shall be made by the affected trades at the responsibility and cost of the Contractor.
- B. Workmanship shall conform to the best electrical installation practice. Equipment and accessories as installed shall be complete and operating. The exact location and arrangement of material and equipment shall be determined as work progresses to conform in the best possible manner with related work of other crafts. The work in all its details is subject to the approval of the Contracting Officer. Any work or material which is rejected must be removed and replaced immediately.
- C. Test all wiring to indicate that the completed system is free of short circuits and undesirable grounds, and is ready for operation. Insulation resistance of all wiring shall meet the performance suggested by the manufacturer. Provide all necessary testing equipment for making tests. All tests shall be made in the presence of the Contracting Officer or a representative thereof. When test results are not satisfactory, the Contractor shall make such adjustments and changes as are necessary and shall notify the Contracting Officer that he is ready for another test. Repeat the test or tests which disclosed the faulty or defective work or equipment, and make such additional tests as the Contracting Officer deems necessary.
- D. Protection of Fixtures, Material and Equipment:
 - 1. Continuously maintain adequate protection of stored materials and installed work. Fixtures and equipment, whether stored under a roof or outside shall be tightly covered with sheet polyethylene or waterproof tarpaulin and protected against dirt, rust, moisture, chemical and mechanical injury. Materials and equipment shall not be stored directly on the ground nor in areas where they will be subject to physical injury from vehicular traffic or construction machinery. Contractor shall see to it that conduit and equipment installed by him is not used by other trades as supports for scaffolds or personnel. Delicate equipment shall not be delivered to the job site unless they can be placed in completed and protected areas. Conduit openings shall be capped or plugged during installation.
 - 2. At the completion of the work, equipment, fixtures, exposed supports, and piping shall be cleaned to the satisfaction of the Contracting Officer.

- E. Allowances:
 - 1. Make due allowance for relocating any lighting fixtures, wiring device, disconnect switch, motor controller, panel-board or equipment item, prior to installation (whether furnished by the contractor or by others and requiring electrical connections), a distance of 5'-0" or less from the locations indicated on the drawings without additional cost to the Government.

- F. Cleaning Up and Housekeeping:
 - 1. At the end of each work day, remove all debris, surplus materials or foreign matter (caused by the performance of the electrical work) from the premises. On completion of the work, the contractor shall be responsible for leaving the premises in a clean condition.
 - 2. Keep stocks of material and equipment stored on the premises in a neat and orderly manner.

END OF SECTION